

UC-NRLF

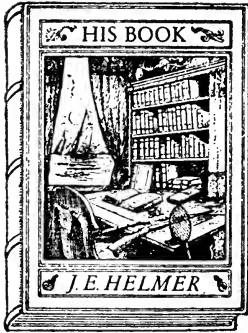


LB 271 886

THE  
SCIENTIFIC  
ANGLER



BERKELEY  
LIBRARY  
UNIVERSITY OF  
CALIFORNIA

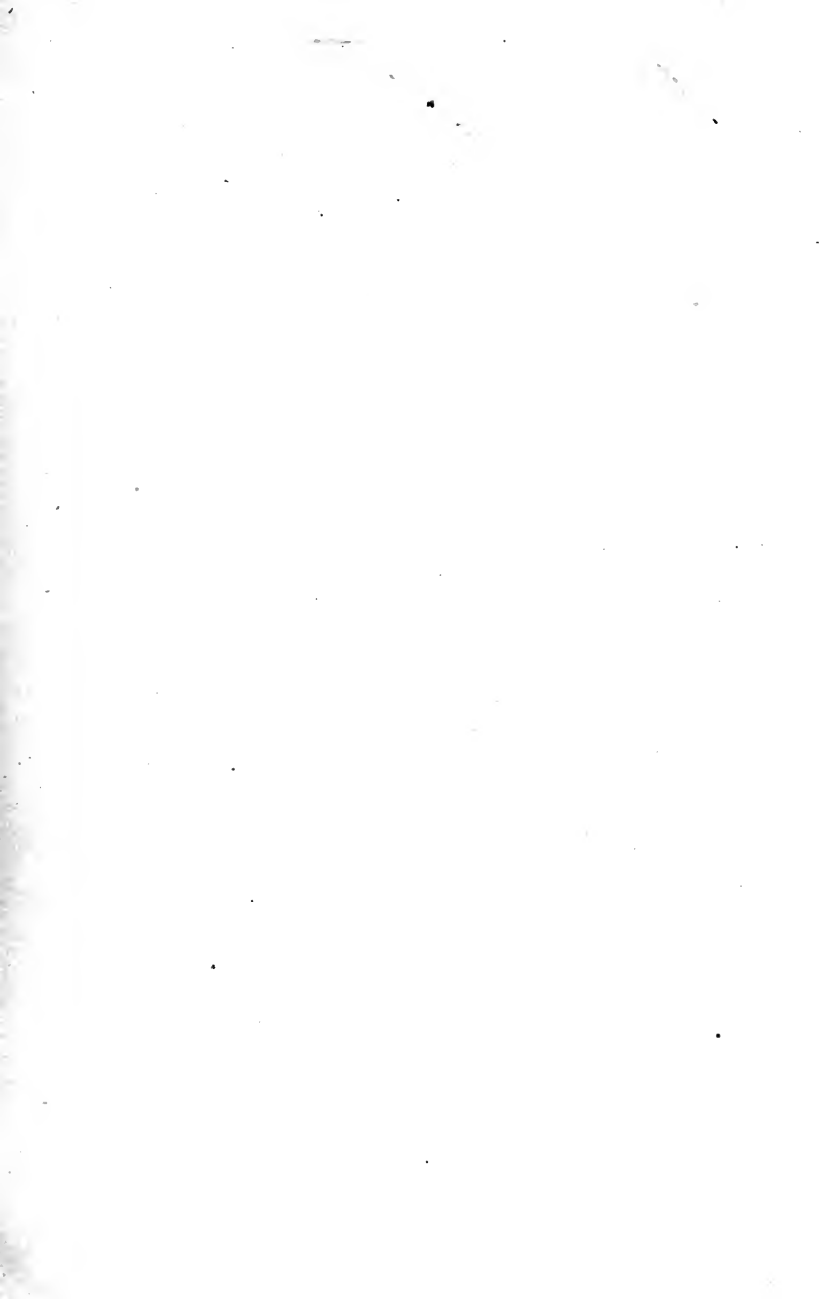


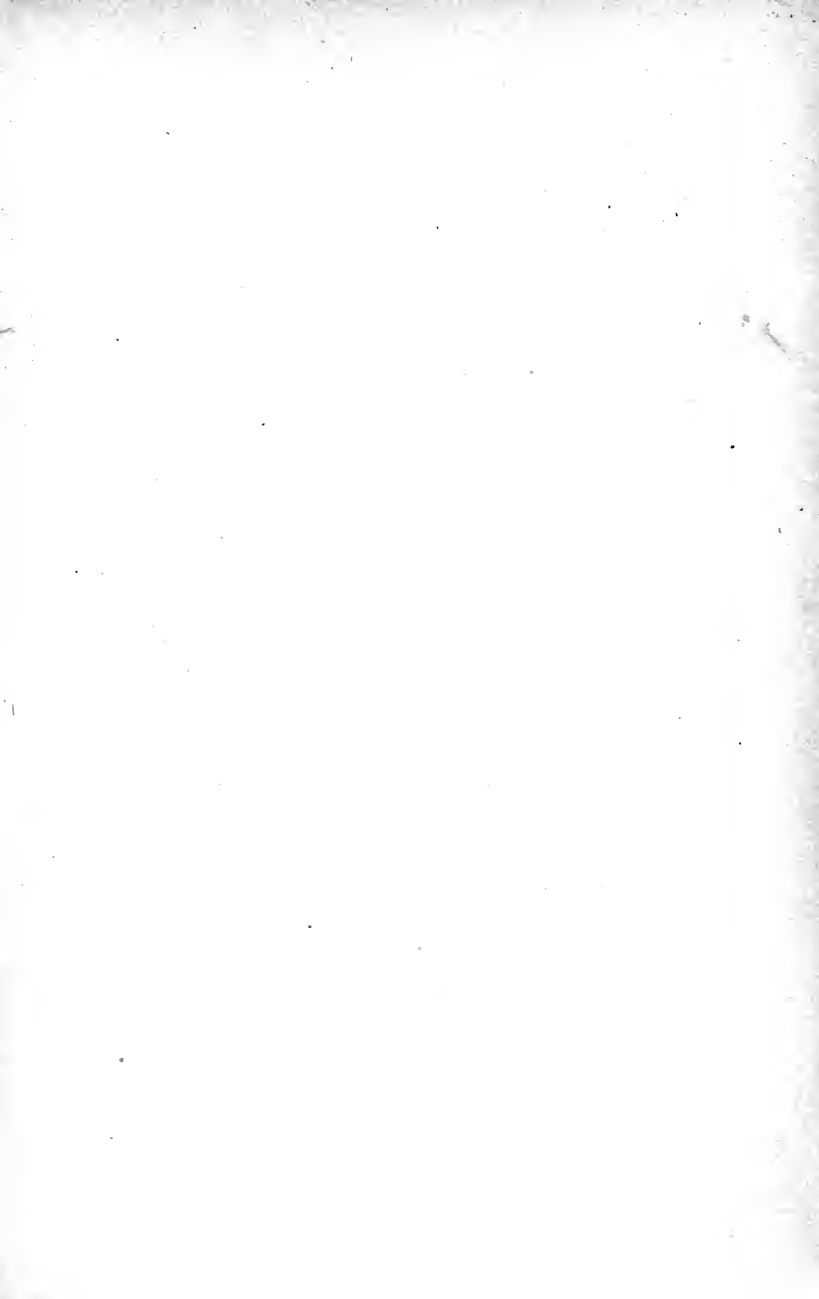
35  
N. G. Lyster

1885

To Rev. F. E. J. Lloyd

May 20/87





Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

# THE SCIENTIFIC ANGLER.

BEING A

General and Instructive Work on Artistic Angling.

BY THE LATE

DAVID FOSTER.

COMPILED BY HIS SONS, AND EDITED BY

WM. C. HARRIS,

EDITOR OF THE "AMERICAN ANGLER."

ILLUSTRATED.



NEW YORK:  
ORANGE JUDD COMPANY,  
751 BROADWAY.  
1883.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1883, by the  
ORANGE JUDD COMPANY,  
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.



SH439  
F75  
1883a

## THE EDITOR'S PREFACE.



David Foster, the author of "The Scientific Angler," was born at Burton-on-Trent, England, September 22d, 1815, and at the date of his recent death, was known wherever a salmon, trout or grayling fly is thrown in the kingdom of Great Britain, as the Izaak Walton of the nineteenth century. This angling patronymic, joined to that of "Old David," by which he was more familiarly known, indicates the esteem and affection in which he was held by English lovers of the angle. He was certainly one of the most observant and practical rodsters that England, where the cultured angler is an artist, has ever produced. The book before us is an attestation of this fact.

My province, as editor, has been confined to foot notes, more or less copious, in which I have endeavored to make plain to the American reader the angling phrases, terms and tackle used in England, giving, so far as practicable, American analogues of the English fish. The text of the author remains untouched, with the exception of the exclusion of a few paragraphs on

fishing for barbel, bream, and tench, and the chapter on fish culture—the reader would have found in the former but little of value, and the latter is far behind the present advanced status of fish culture in America.

It will be noted that the foot notes, which are all my own, are free from critical comments on the author's views; from which I have designedly abstained, although not a few paragraphs of the text are in conflict with the approved practice of the best American anglers.

WM. C. HARRIS.

NEW YORK, 1883.

# C O N T E N T S .



	PAGE
CHAPTER I.	
The Habits and Haunts of Fish.....	7
CHAPTER II.	
The Habits and Haunts of Fish ( <i>Continued</i> ).....	32
CHAPTER III.	
Bottom Fishing (General).....	44
CHAPTER IV.	
Bottom Fishing ( <i>Continued</i> ).....	59
CHAPTER V.	
Bottom Fishing ( <i>Continued</i> ).....	64
CHAPTER VI.	
Pike Fishing.....	70
CHAPTER VII.	
Spinning for Trout.....	83
CHAPTER VIII.	
Worm Fishing for Trout.....	92
CHAPTER IX.	
Grub Fishing for Grayling.....	97

## CHAPTER X.

Piscatorial Entomology.....	101
-----------------------------	-----

## CHAPTER XI.

On Fly Making.....	123
--------------------	-----

## CHAPTER XII.

Fly Fishing for Trout and Grayling.....	145
---	-----

## CHAPTER XIII.

Live Fly and Beetle Fishing.....	182
----------------------------------	-----

## CHAPTER XIV.

Notes on the Month for Fly Fishing.....	185
---	-----

## CHAPTER XV.

Salmon and Sea Trout Fishing.....	224
-----------------------------------	-----

## CHAPTER XVI.

About Hooks.....	240
------------------	-----

# THE SCIENTIFIC ANGLER.

---

## CHAPTER I.

### THE HABITS AND HAUNTS OF FISH.

POWER OF VISION, HEARING, ETC., POSSESSED BY FISH.\* PERIODIC MOVEMENTS AND HABITS OF SALMON, BROWN TROUT, CHARR, GRAYLING, AND PIKE.

The habits of fish depend in no small degree on the power of their senses, and to these we will briefly allude before dealing with the subject in detail. The first faculty to claim our attention is that of

SIGHT.—The clearness with which a grayling, lying

---

\* The subject of the senses of fishes is the cause of much curious comment and speculation among angling naturalists, who do not willingly consent that the class *Pisces* shall be placed upon a plane below that of the insects. The belief that fishes possess qualities which reach a standard beyond the instinct of self-preservation has recently gained in strength and interest, owing to the increased facilities that fish culture has given us to observe their habits. It is conceded by naturalists that certain insects, and many of the lower animals, have the power of imparting mutual intelligence by processes unknown to us. The little ants hobnobbing with each other; the cooing dove wooing its mate vocally; the hen clucking her brood under protecting wings, are familiar instances of vocal intercourse among insects and birds, and no one who has watched the minnows of a shallow pool, has failed to see equally sure indications that fishes have a way of their own in communicating with each other. I have often seen them dart swiftly towards each other, putting nose to nose, and in a moment or two scull leisurely away with what looked to me like a self-congratulatory flirt of the tail, as if the matter communicated was of the utmost importance to fish life in general.

at a depth of eight or ten feet of water, can distinguish a small speck of a midge, invisible almost to the human eye, is often a matter of comment and surprise. All fish, however, are not equally well endowed in this respect; but it may be safely affirmed that their organs of sight are quite as well adapted to their native element—water—as are those of birds and respiratory animals generally to the atmosphere. But, on the other hand, experience tends to prove that the more suited the eye of the fish may be to his particular element, the more indistinct is his vision beyond it. We have an instance of this in the grayling, which, although more cautious and timid, and possessed of keener visual organs than the trout, will rise much nearer the rodster, and is not so easily disturbed and affrighted. The inferiority of a fish's perception of objects in the air, as compared with what is in or upon the surface of the water, partly arises from the fact that the eye adapts itself to the medium through which the rays of light are transmitted. We have frequently observed the pupil of a fish's eye contract considerably in the course of a second or two after it has been taken from the water, from the same principle which causes the pupil of the eye of the domestic cat to expand or contract as the light diminishes or increases. Observation shows that it is the moving object that frightens the fish.\* We have seen trout suddenly cease feeding and return to their accustomed retreat upon our merely raising an arm; and when their "holt" has proved to be near the opposite bank, and we have been

---

\* Fish are startled by shadows to a degree hardly understood or valued, as cause and effect, by the angler in his search for a successful score. A moving dark line reflected by an uplifted arm, or by an overhanging rod, or the dense and sharply-cut shadow cast by the pier of a bridge, will cause them to sheer off affrighted; especially in the latter instance, when shad, in their upward swim to their spawning grounds, have been seen to turn tail-fin and dart down stream pell-mell, as if a demon shark was among them.

in full view, in clear relief upon a high bank, on keeping perfectly stationary for fifty to seventy minutes,\* they have again ventured into the open to take our fly. From a constant repetition of convincing experiments, we have been led to infer that the crystalline and various other humors of a fish's eye are capable of reflecting only a vague and distorted image of any object that may be even a yard from the water's surface. We have stood over the center of a stream, upon a narrow plank, placed within a few inches of the surface of the water, perfectly motionless, just as the fish have turned out of their usual haunts to poise near the surface, and feed on the flies which have suddenly become plentiful. So long as our perpendicular position was maintained, the fish rose fearlessly all around to our very feet, but the least movement had the effect of affrighting all the fish in the immediate vicinity.

But, notwithstanding all this, it must not be forgotten that the organ of sight is the most important in their possession, and not only their food supply, but their very existence is dependent upon its proper exercise. True it is that constant practice, in a measure, develops their ocular faculties; and as acuteness of vision increases the natural timidity of the trout, so surely does he gradually decline surface feeding, preying upon fry and the smaller yearling fish, as also upon the larvæ of aquatic insects, etc., thus showing reliance on his greater powers of discernment in his own element. In comparatively clear and still water, the old corpulent denizens of the limpid depths thus exhibit the most provoking discretion, defying frequently the rodster's best efforts to allure.

The superior power of vision the fish has in its own

---

\* This is certainly a misprint, for we have noted that trout will return, under like circumstances, to their feed, after a lapse of from three to five minutes.

element\* is partly due to the fact that light, like sound, on penetrating water suffers an alteration, both of the rate of progress and the direction of the rays. Refraction enables the fish to see an approaching or moving object, even when a projecting bank or overhanging rock or other substance intervenes. Mr. Ronalds illustrates this by a familiar scientific experiment with a coin and vessel of water, by which the former, when placed in the bottom of the latter, is seen at an acute angle, when the side of the vessel intercepts a straight line between the coin and the eye of the spectator. We have known cultivators of domesticated trout, who, being unacquainted with the laws of refraction, have attributed this to various other causes.

SENSE OF HEARING.—That trout are not wholly devoid of this sense is now a well established axiom. There is nothing about the exterior of the head of a fresh-water fish that would indicate that it is provided with an ear. Our leading physiologists and anatomists assert, nevertheless, that fish and other aquatic creatures have the internal organ in a state of perfection. In animals of higher grade the mechanical apparatus of hearing consists of two connected portions, external and internal. Fish appear to have the internal part, which is in direct communication with the brain. The organs of hearing possessed by terrestrial animals are designed for the reception of the more delicate vibrations of the atmos-

---

\* A few summers ago, when fishing for black bass, using a small gray and black palmer as a point fly, I made a cast at the tail of a shallow reach, just above an old fish weir. The water, for a stretch of at least fifty yards, was not more than two feet deep. As my fly touched the water, a whistle from a fishing chum attracted my attention, and I glanced up stream. At that moment I saw the swirl of a bass thirty feet away, and immediately after the wake, as the fish "struck a bee-line" for my fly. The pluck was instantaneous and sure, and in a few moments a two-pounder was creeled. This incident convinced me that the sense of sight in fishes, when exercised in their natural element, is much greater than that with which they are credited.



phere, while those of the fish are better adapted to the stronger pulsations of a denser element. Thus, though the inhabitants of the waters are insensible to atmospheric sound, they are very susceptible to vibrations of the earth which are communicated to the water, and are undistinguishable by us.

Who has not observed the terrified agitation of the fish, as far as the eyes can penetrate the water, at the least perceptible vibration caused by the stamp of the foot on the bottom of a punt or boat? We have frequently ourselves seen fish clear the water altogether in ponds and lakes at a distance of forty yards from the point or focus of concussion. That sound is not communicated only by the external ear may be seen by the following experiment: Take an ordinary tuning fork, strike it, and take the full volume of the sound quite close to the ear, then strike again and place the handle against or between the teeth, when, though at some distance from the ear, the sound will not be found to be diminished. Vibrations vary in intensity according to the degree of solidity and density of the conductive bodies. Thus, we are told that in the atmosphere sound travels at the rate of something like one thousand feet per second on bright, clear days, but eleven hundred in murky, dull and hazy weather. In water, however, sound travels very much quicker, being at the rate of five thousand feet per second, and where wood is the medium quicker still, sixteen thousand feet per second being its rate of progress. If, therefore, a solid substance is the conductor of sound, it naturally follows that the sound will be more distinct. The operator upon the violin has a keener perception of the various strains of the instrument than the ordinary listener, since wood is the sole conductive body in his case. The organ of hearing being enclosed in the hard case of the head is, in the case of fishes, susceptible therefore to no slight variation of sounds; no noise that does not occa-

sion a vibration of the element which they inhabit reaches them. Thus the effects of approaching heavy foot-falls will be perceived, when a loud acclamation will have no visible effect on them. A learned doctor of divinity, once known to the writer, used to include in his category of angling requisites a gigantic musical-box, which, for bottom fishing, it was supposed, served the double purpose of being a convenient seat and a charming substitute for ground bait. So far as the latter object was concerned, the effect was purely imaginary, as, to the impartial mind, results amply testified.\*

We have now dealt with the two chief organs possessed by fish, namely, those of sight and hearing, a knowledge of both of which is highly important to the angler. With regard to the senses of taste and smell, we may briefly state that from what we have been able to ascertain they are very slightly developed; that of taste we do not believe is possessed in the faintest degree by the majority of fish. † Roach, grayling, and the smaller species of deli-

---

\* It is conceded by observant anglers, that fish hear no sound originating in the air; but step, as lightly as you may, upon the margin of a stream and the fish will scatter like shot from the shallows where they are feeding or frolicking. The larger the fish and the less the depth of water the greater and wilder the scattering will be. Security seems to lie with them in the relative depth of the pools, as the light steps of the angler only disturb them in a foot or two of water. A fish lying in a hole three or four feet deep, close to the banks is not perturbed by any ordinary concussion.

† In this connection intelligent anglers are apt to query: "Granted that fishes are only slightly, if at all, endowed with the sense of taste or smell, why do trout, black bass and other fish reject the artificial lure if the hook is not instantly fastened in their jaws or throat?" I answer: Fresh-water fishes, such as trout, bass, etc., feed as a rule upon soft food. The shell of the crustacea of our inland lakes and streams is edibly tender, and suggests no anomaly to the feel of the tongue or jaw of the fish. Not so with the fatal hook. Its gritty impact with the closing jaw or tongue suggests a foreign substance. It is foul food and as such is instantly rejected. Again, the sheep'shead, drum and other salt-water species, feeding upon clams and muscles, crunching the shells with their massive teeth and strong jaws do not eject the lure; on the

cate organism we have found display fastidiousness in this respect, but the mass of voracious fish we believe to be totally devoid of all sense of it. The nostrils are doubtless the medium by which impurities in the water are detected. Certain it is that such impurities are perceived, and whenever possible avoided, as is plainly exemplified in these days of river pollution.

Apart from the above causes the movements of fish, both migratory and non-migratory, are generally determined by one of two causes; first, by the search after suitable places for the deposit of their eggs, a certain temperature of water being necessary to vivify them; and secondly by the quest of food. The movements of all animals which feed on living creatures are greatly influenced by the habits of the creatures preyed upon, and fish offer no exception to this rule. We shall now proceed to lay before our readers a comprehensive view of what has taken us well nigh fifty years of patient application to acquire, namely, the characteristic habits and movements of anadromous and non-migratory fish, a knowledge of which it is incumbent upon every fisherman to possess.

THE SALMON\*—(*Salmo salar.*)—As is well known, these fish, with other orders of the same family, elsewhere described, pass a portion of each year in salt water, descending to the sea after they have deposited their spawn on the gravelly beds of the higher portions of rivers. The time of migration varies in different waters; thus we hear of early and late rivers. The spawning

---

contrary, to ensure a probable capture, they are permitted by the angler to move off without restraint until the shell is crunched or the naked bait pouched—a decisive moment—when the strike must be made instant. These fish are accustomed to mouthing hard substances, hence do not “spit out” the hook, if felt, when taking the naked or shell-covered hook.

\* The Salmon (*Salmo salar*) of Great Britain is similar in its habits, coloration, etc., to the salmon of American Atlantic waters.

season ranges from March to November. The majority of mature fish ascend and descend at fixed periods, the time chosen generally being during a flood. The early spring floods bring the first and main instalments to the sources of the rivers; but in the event of these failing, the fish often prolong their stay in salt water bays and in the mouths of rivers until the first rising of water will admit of a passage. There are in most salmon rivers numerous weirs so constructed as to render the passage of fish an impossibility, except during a heavy flood. In waters where these artificial obstructions do not exist, migratory fish pass frequently to and fro, these periodic ascents being doubtless occasioned by the quest of food. For a salmon to remain in good condition for a protracted period in fresh water would appear to be an impossibility. Their ova are vivified and their young flourish in the inland streams, but after attaining a given size their growth stops, and they sicken and die if the passage to salt water is obstructed. The cleansing influence of the marine trip is necessary at least every two years, even when the supply of food in fresh water is ample, which is seldom the case. The freshly run fish may be said to be invariably fat, and in the best possible condition, not only in the substance of the flesh, but in the large quantities of adipose matter which is found on the pyloric appendages, which secret store serves as an internal source of sustenance, supporting the fish during its summer stay in fresh water, where food is comparatively scarce.

It is often asserted that anadromous fish will not feed except in salt water, and that their internal fat sustains them when absent from it. This is most certainly erroneous, as migratory fish are not more given to fasting than are any other fresh water species when food is plentiful. The young of both grayling and trout suffer greatly from the presence of salmon in the tributaries of

our rivers, the former particularly are sought after and taken by them.

A salmon in its young state is commonly called a parr, smolt, smelt, or samlet. When at this stage they rise boldly at the artificial trout-fly, but it is unlawful to take them. The terms for the young of other migratory fish (*Salmonidæ*) are scad, shed, black-tip, blue-fin, hipper, etc.\* When the young of these fish attain a length of about six inches, which they do in from eighteen months to two years from the time of hatching, they descend to the sea, where their stay is, generally speaking, about four months. Upon the first return of the young fish, after a sojourn of about this period, it is commonly termed a grilse or salmon-peal. The term "kelt" is applied to male or female after spawning time, the male being also specially distinguished by the appellation, "kipper." The fish then assume the color and form of the fully developed fish. With regard to the hard and fast rules usually given for their growth and development, their stay in their native or in salt water, we may state that great variation exists among individuals living under the same apparent conditions. The pisciculturist well knows that a portion of every brood or hatch of fish are larger, stronger, and more vigorous than the remainder, and the same thing is exemplified when the fish attain maturity. We cannot endorse the statements of some who affirm, though they never attempted to prove, that the fry mature so quickly and grow so rapidly, when at liberty, as to be able to descend to the sea

---

\* As a curious illustration of the fecundity of popular nomenclature as applied to fishes, I append a partial list of names by which the salmon is, or has been, known in Great Britain: Baggit, beikat, bluecap, blue poll, brandling, brandlin, chine, cudding, shoe, farthing trout, finnack, fork-tail, gravelin, gibfish, grilse, gresle-kelt, gouries, half-fish, heppar, kelt, kepper-grisle, kilty, kipper, laspring, lax, lewin, ligger, pink, pug, rawner, salmon-sprint, samlet, sewin, simen, skeggar, skirling, smelt, smoot, sparling, sprag, sprod, summer-cock, trotter, etc.

within twelve months from the hatching period. Of their rapid growth during the marine trip we have had ample proof; this is perfectly rational, the sea being the feeding ground for the whole family of migratory fish, the abundance of small animalculæ therein contained forming a never-failing supply to the immigrants.

In ascending rivers, salmon usually keep near one side of the bottom of the water, but when their tributaries are being ascended, they take the middle of the swiftest streams. When a stream forms the outlet of a lake, or any sheet of water known to be the annual resort of migratory fish, it is of the most vital importance that no obstruction be erected to arrest their passage. There has been a considerable falling off in the takes of salmon during the last twenty years or so. This may be attributed to three combined causes; (first) the erection of weirs and flood gates; (second) river pollution; (third) the depredation of the fungoid growth, termed the salmon disease.

With regard to the first and second causes here given, we will take the particular case of the Trent. This river was formerly one of the most important for salmon yields in the United Kingdom, and it still ranks next to the Thames for its yields of other fish. The river itself, devoid of tributaries, is of the following extent: In Lincolnshire, twenty miles; in Nottinghamshire, fifty-five miles; in Derbyshire, thirty miles; and in Staffordshire, forty miles. The tributaries take their rise at fifteen hundred to nineteen hundred feet above the sea level, and are pure. They extend as follows: The Dove and Churnet, sixty-three miles; Wye and Derwent, sixty-seven miles; the Soar and Wreck (Leicestershire), sixty-five miles, the Idle, forty-five miles; the Blythe and Anker, thirty-five miles; the Terme, twenty-five miles; the Tame, twenty-five miles; the Erewash, Sow (Staffordshire), and Devon river, each twenty miles. The whole

of the above streams, owing to the rapid fall in most cases, and the purity and cool temperature of their waters, were the annual resort of salmon and other migratory fish in immense numbers a few generations back. What do we find to be the case to-day? The salmon are debarred from ascending even the main river, except during heavy floods, by senselessly contrived weirs at different points, and with the same exception, the passage up the Derwent is entirely shut off by weirs below Derby. In respect to the Dove, being swift and of excessively rapid fall, it was originally the favorite resort of Trent salmon, many of which would ascend as high as Dovedale. There are some four or five weirs that are rendered passable only when the river is bank-full, after a very heavy shoot of water from the hills, until Rocester is reached, where there is situated a weir that is impassable at all times from its peculiar construction. All this may seem strange to those of our readers who have been led to imagine that the natural buoyancy and strength of anadromous fish enable them to overcome both ordinary and extraordinary difficulties in the way of impediments to their upward course. It is, nevertheless, the fact that salmon are to be annually seen for weeks and even months vainly trying to ascend an obstruction, known to be an effectual bar to their upward progress, until finally they deposit their spawn at the point where the passage is arrested, whether suitable or not. Salmon leap to a great height to surmount a cascade or perpendicular fall, but the long slanting weirs are not to be stemmed when they exceed a given length and angle.

But to return. The Tame is now polluted to such an extent that even pike fail of late to flourish in it. The main river, too, is now also polluted so as to admit only of the presence of fresh run migratory fish when flooded by its tributaries. Thus, out of five hundred and seventy-five miles of water only a very few can be accessible to the

salmon as spawning ground. It will, therefore, be seen that, taking the noble Trent as a type, salmon in English waters, unless more urgently looked to by the district conservators and other responsible bodies, will soon be a thing of the past.

The fungoid disease, named as the third cause of the falling off of the product of salmon in our largest and most important rivers, is most disastrous in its results, and when it attacks the fish in the spring or early summer months its depredations are great. Owing to the circumstance of its being unknown to salt water, the gradual growth of fungus over the fish is speedily arrested, and finally cleansed away when the fish leave the rivers. This fungoid growth, so detrimental to the well-being and life of fish, has been termed the salmon disease, which is anything but a correct appellation, seeing that its deadly effects are often even more marked in the case of trout and other fish. This disease is a choleraic disorder, and we are told owes its immediate origin to animal or vegetable substances, one or both, in a state of poisonous decomposition in the water. Effectual remedies there would appear to be none. The only safe and efficient remedial course would appear to be to avoid river pollution, and thus purify instead of putrify water containing fish. Occasionally, however, this deadly disorder is found to be rife in waters that cannot have been polluted by any of the numerous impurities to which the waters of populated districts are exposed, and in these instances it may be assumed that the presence of decaying vegetable substances is owing to protracted unhealthy weather.

Salmon frequent only the northern and temperate parts of the earth. It is a noteworthy fact that the inhabitants of the more southern latitudes, when mature, are much inferior, both as regards size and gameness of disposition—this at least in the eastern hemisphere—



to those of colder regions. In Norway these fish are capable of attaining a prodigious size and weight, eighty to ninety pounds occasionally, whilst in the waters of Britain, the adult fish very rarely attain to one half that weight.

THE COMMON TROUT\*—(*Salmo fario*).—For variety of size, color, and disposition, the brown or common trout may be said to eclipse all other species. Every loch and river, and almost every tributary, has its variety. The geological formation of the bed of the river, the aquatic vegetation, and the quality and description of the food obtained by the fish, have much to do with this variation. No fish can be said to be so widely distributed, or so capable of affording more variety of sport, from the lordly Thames fish to the game little denizens of the Devon streams. Trout will flourish in almost all waters capable of sustaining fish, but their chosen resorts are rapid, clear mountain streams, the jostling waters of which, foaming amidst fragments of rock, whirling and surging in their rapid course, form numerous cascades and caverned banks. Such are the favorite haunts of the trout. The merest rill of clear and rapid water will often contain vast quantities of these fish, when from its appearance it would be deemed incapable of sustaining a single fin. Under shelving banks and submerged substances, amongst roots of trees bordering the banks of

---

\* The common brown trout of English waters is described by Ronalds as follows: "The back fin has a pale brown color, with dark spots upon it; the other fins, including the tail, have a red tint. The color of the back, when in perfect condition, is usually a dark olive-green, studded with a mixture of black and brownish spots. The sides are shaded off from the olive to a greenish-yellow, studded with red spots, the black spots gradually vanishing. Lower down the yellow tint approaches a salmon color, and the belly is nearly white, without any spots." It will be seen at once that the English congener of our own brook trout wears quite a sober livery in comparison with that of the American mountain beauty; their habits, however, are closely allied to those of our native fish.

the streams, trout secrete themselves when not feeding. A casual observer, after a careful and prolonged inspection along its banks, may often affirm that a length upon a noted trout stream is wholly devoid of fish, when the subsequent appearance of surface food will prove the water to be alive with them, and they may as suddenly disappear when the insects leave the water's surface to secrete themselves before an impending atmospheric change. In some districts trout spawn in winter, in others in October and November, or in December, and elsewhere in January and in February, or in March. The precise time depends also in a measure on the prevailing state of the weather and water. In the close season, trout leave the larger streams, ascending the brooks and rivulets, in the gravelly bottoms of which they deposit their spawn. When this operation is effected, they disperse to their wonted haunts, the tails of currents, lying for the most part above and below pools and slow running deeps, behind any impediment to the running water, such as thick piles and sunken timber. As they get into condition they move to stronger water, occasionally for this purpose ascending brooks whose waters may be turbulent and strong to their very source. Here they linger by the edges of streams that flow into the throats of the pools, and at this period rise boldly and unsuspectingly for a time, and can then be allured by the novice in a comparatively easy manner. After the lapse of a few short weeks, as the water and weather become clearer and brighter, the trout grow cautious, where heavily fished over, they having now entirely recovered their customary vigor, and with it their beauty of form and color. They now take up their old positions, vacated prior to the commencement of the spawning season. These are chosen as vantage ground for food, the largest fish occupying the best feeding ground; and when one of these has been extracted, the next best

fish in the immediate vicinity takes possession of the vacated post. These fish will often fight desperately for a favorable situation, hence it is that the larger tenants occupy the best positions. Near circulating eddies, behind large stones, in side and mid-stream, below jutting portions of banks, etc., ever near the main volume of water, and the perpetuated line of bubbles wherever it may tend, the trout lie assiduously observant of passing objects, whether in or on the top of the water.

When a quantity of flies are "up" in rapid water, the fish poise themselves near the surface, the more readily to close upon their winged prey; but, upon the other hand, when no surface food is presented to their view, they are quick to seize adventurous fry of their own or any other species, without distinction. In the latter half of May their attention is generally attracted and absorbed by the then active grub or pupa of the May-fly or drake; and as these nymphæ are, generally speaking, numerous in the waters frequented by trout, the fish are seldom found rising at this particular period. In about a week or ten days from the first signs of activity, the pupæ referred to vacate their cases and rise to the water's surface, when, after emerging from yet another skin, they appear in their sub-imago state as green drakes. The fish, not comprehending the change, continue to feed upon the undeveloped worm for a few days, until the now profusely laden surface allures them from the river's bed, and monopolizes their whole attention during the stay of the May-fly, which usually continues from seventeen to twenty days. By the time the season of the drake terminates, the fish have so regaled themselves upon this lusty ephemeral, that for a week or so they find it incumbent upon them to retire to the deep still water, to doze off the effect of the excess. After this they again resort to their accustomed posts, which are not forsaken until the spawning season again comes

around, except when forced to retreat in the face of what in Highland phraseology is called a heavy "spate," when, particularly in hilly districts, the water rises and the stream becomes "bank-full," to overflow in a few hours. Then not only is the force of the current too strong, but the water is generally too thick in mid-current to admit of the movement of the fish. In these circumstances the quiet corners and side eddies, no matter if quite out of the usual water-course, are the resort not only of trout, but of all other species that may inhabit the water. The whole congregate in places of comparative safety when danger threatens, the minnows with the trout, the pike with the gudgeon. When trout reach a more than ordinary size, they disdain surface food. At twilight, and even later in the hot months, however, they will rise at the large moths, but are not to be allured to the surface by small flies. When over two pounds weight, their flesh assumes a beautiful red tint, not unlike that of a well-conditioned salmon, but when they much exceed that weight, they do incalculable harm to the water they inhabit by greedily devouring the small half-grown fish. Trout occasionally attain a prodigious size, five and six pounds being not altogether uncommon. But although a trout may reach this weight, he does not long retain it, for within a comparatively brief period all the store fish within a hundred yards of his haunt will have disappeared, and the cannibal who has thus depopulated it will diminish quickly in flesh, showing a gaunt head and rakish-looking frame as the result of the scarcity of food; for, strange as it may appear, the veteran trout seldom forsakes his chosen haunt, even to appease hunger's keen pangs. Fish of this description should be destroyed. At twilight they will frequently rise boldly at the minnow. At mid-day it is of little use angling for them, as the tackle must then necessarily be fine to get them to face it; and when this is the case,

it is unequal to the task of holding them when hooked. In large rivers the existence of hybrids in certain of the first sub-genus group of *Salmonidæ* is by no means infrequent, the non-migratory fish interbreeding with the migratory, producing tidal or slod trout, and other varieties, which occasionally attain considerable dimensions. The common trout, in certain waters, sometimes attains a large size, notably in the Irish lochs, those of Loch Neagh frequently scaling eighteen to twenty pounds. Thames fish are occasionally taken weighing in the teens of pounds, but such captures are few, and we regret to have to add, are becoming yearly more infrequent, notwithstanding the instalments from High Wycombe and other sources. Kingston, Shepperton, and Chertsey were years ago the best localities for these fish, and, therefore, the chief resorts of the anglers. More recently, Sunbury, Weybridge, Maidenhead, and Marlow Weir have become the favorite places.

THE GILLAROO\* TROUT of Ireland is another large variety. In their native lakes they attain frequently four or five pounds weight, but when introduced into other waters they often much exceed that weight. This variety affords much excellent sport when hooked, even when small. It is scarcely advisable, however, to introduce this large variety into ordinary trout streams, as the effects in all probability would be similar to those following the introduction of bass in the American trout rivers, the original stock gradually disappearing.† Large fish in-

---

\* So-called from the structural arrangements of the stomach, which is usually as large as a chicken's, in formation resembling the gizzard of the bird known as the gillaroo.

† In view of the present desire of many English rodsters, including the editor of the "Fishing Gazette," to introduce the black bass into the streams of England, it would be well for them to take heed of the fact stated in the text. This fish will destroy the "coarse fish," particularly the *Cyprinidæ* of any stream or lake. It kills from the love of killing and, pound for pound, is the sturdiest fighter that sculls the waters.

variably require an enormous amount of food to enable them to grow and flourish, and should never be introduced into water which will not afford the necessary supply.

CHARR AND POLLEN—(*Coregonus*.)\* Both these fish are extremely local. The first named are found in large lakes, the deepest part of which they frequent. Like trout, they vary in different waters, chiefly however in color, which is often most brilliant when they have been freshly taken, the fiery red breast being then marvellously vivid. The torgock, or Welsh charr, is perhaps the most conspicuously colored. It is found in Llanberis and other lakes in the north of Wales. It is smaller than those of Windermere and other northern lakes, its average length being thirteen to fifteen inches. The charr is strictly a northern fish, and flourishes much better in lakes fed by underground springs at some elevation than in shallow and low-lying waters. The lakes and lochs chiefly noted for these fish in England, Ireland, and Scotland, are Windermere, Ennerdale, Buttermere, Wast-Water, in the north of England; Lough Enniskillin, Lough Eske, Lough Dan, Lough Melvin, Lough Killin, and Corr in Ireland; Lochs Grannoch, Roy, and Awe, in Scotland; and Lake Helier in Hoy, in the Orkneys. From their habit of seeking the seclusion of the very deepest water during the greater part of the year, they are seldom taken by the sportsman, although bold risers at the fly. Occasionally they are excessively shy, and are not to be approached within a considerable distance when surface feeding. The contents of their stomachs when taken generally consist of aquatic and aerial insects, and the

---

\*The trout is now relegated to the *salvelinus* or charr species of the salmonoids, to which the Rangely Lake trout, the California mountain trout and our common speckled brook trout belong. The charrs, however, differ greatly in coloration from the American varieties, but few having spots, which, when present, are of a dull reddish orange color.

small fish known as the stickleback, which latter forms their principal food. This fact failed to attract our notice until the year 1862, when we were fishing upon the Awe, in Argyleshire, at different periods during a visit of four months. We had observed a succession of bubbles appearing upon the water's surface for an instant, and having never succeeded in raising a fish in immediate proximity, we concluded that they were caused by an escape of gas or air from the bottom of the water. After a while there came a day when the momentary bubbles were exceptionally numerous, though they never occurred near the boat. This circumstance did not escape us, and we put up a cast of brown trout flies, in lieu of the larger salmon fly we had previously been using, and these we succeeded in casting in the midst of a rising of bubbles, and this time not in vain, for the next instant we not only had a rise but a hooked fish, which eventually proved to be a charr of the northern species, and was found to be gorged with small sticklebacks. Subsequent experience proved that the eruption referred to was simply a shoal of these tiny fish clearing the water in their frantic and futile endeavors to elude their enemies. The fish here spoken of was sent to the proprietor, Colin Campbell, Esq., of Loch Nell, as we were informed that the existence of charr in the loch was unknown and unsuspected. We were afterwards assured by the proprietor, who wished to know the precise fly that had allured the specimen forwarded, that such was the case. Since then, charr have been regularly taken in their proper season. Charr come into shallow waters to spawn during the autumn, often running into the lake feeders to perform this operation, when nets are illegally used for their destruction. Charr are classed with trout under the new Fresh Water Fishery Acts, and the close time is therefore the same. The POLLEN, or POWAN, are confined to the Irish lakes, Lough Neagh being especially noted for these fish; Lough

Erne, and Lough Lomond, too, are stocked with them. They feed, like the charr, upon the fly and other aquatic insects, etc. The prevailing color is silvery gray, the head and back being bluish brown. They spawn in December and January, and afford good sport during the genial months to the angler.

THE GRAYLING—(*Thymallus vulgaris*.)\*—This is a much more fastidious and delicate fish than the trout; and, although it abounds to profusion in some streams, yet it is very local when compared with the trout. Both Scotland (including the Tweed, Clyde, and the Orkneys) and Ireland are graylingless; neither do they occur in Wales, except in the border streams. They require a peculiar combination of favorable surroundings to enable them to flourish and locate permanently, when introduced into strange streams. A moderate temperature of water is requisite for their well-being, and a succession of stream and still deeps. They generally frequent the lower portions of trout streams in hilly districts; a fair volume of water, too, is essential, as, when there flows less than two tons or thereabouts per minute, grayling descend to a lower point, where their needs in this respect are satisfied. The bottoms of our best grayling rivers usually consist of an alternate mixture of loam, marl, sand, and gravel. The brown trout, in his habits of migration, penetrates still further up stream to more rapid water. The grayling, on the other hand, more generally descends to slower

---

\* The coloration of the English grayling consists of a general tint of light blue silvery gray, covering nearly the whole surface of the body, excepting the belly, which is white, or nearly so, and the scales often exhibit iridescent lines of great beauty. The back and head are of darker gray than the rest of the body. A few lines of brown are intermixed with the gray of the sides, and a few black spots appear on the shoulder. The back fin has a purplish tint, studded with large black spots. The tail is of a slate color. The English fish I judge to be somewhat stouter than the American (*Thymallus tricolor*), and is certainly far inferior to it in beauty of coloration.



running waters; still, there is little doubt that this fish would thrive in many waters in which it is at present unknown. Grayling are, to a certain extent, gregarious, generally frequenting the stills, even when surface feeding. It is owing to this fact that they are given to rise nearer the rodster than the trout, ascending often from the deepest part of the river to seize a passing insect. Although, when top food is plentiful, these fish rise boldly and continuously, they, especially when the water is slightly discolored, are very partial to the larvæ of water-flies, wasps, maggots, cabbage grubs, etc., as they are also to any imitation of these.

Grayling grow rapidly in comparison with other *Salmonidæ*, the young attaining several inches in size in a very few months. They spawn usually in April and May. By October or November, the fry are little larger than a minnow, and are then termed "pink" grayling. The summer following they average four to the pound, and are then known as "shote" fish. About two years from the time of hatching they attain about half a pound, by which time the ova is matured, but not before. The half-pound fish takes the name of grayling. The fish is in the very zenith of health and vigor from October to January. When in perfect condition they are almost black upon the back, which contrasts prettily with the silver-gray and pure white of the bosom. The pectoral fin, which is immensely large in this variety of *Salmonidæ*, is faintly tipped with a ruddy hue. In reference to the habits of the grayling much diversity exists in current literature bearing upon this subject, as the following brief quotations will show:—

"Grayling are found in the North Sea, Cattegat, and Baltic."—*Nilsson*.

"I have proved that grayling will not bear even a brackish water without dying."—*Davy*.

“Early in spring grayling ascend the rivers, where they remain till autumn, and then return to their former element.”—*Donavon*.

“He is a fish that lurks very close all the winter, but is very pleasant and jolly after mid-April, in the hot months.”—*Walton*.

“They delight in rivers that glide through mountainous places, and are met with in the clearest and swiftest of those streams.”—*Mackintosh*.

“The grayling is the deadeast-hearted fish in the world.”—*Cotton*.

“The grayling passes its time entirely in fresh water, and I cannot understand how Donavon—whose figure, bad as it is, shows itself to be this fish—says it is migratory.”—*Haughton*.

“Grayling are best in season in autumn and winter; indeed, they should not be taken till August, and all caught before that period should be returned.”—*Francis*.

“They cannot stem rapid streams, and are gradually carried lower and lower, and at last disappear.”—*Shipley and Fitzgibbon*.

“The grayling is an excellent fish for sport.”—*Ronalds*.

The juxtaposition of these extracts shows how many inaccuracies and fallacies are diffused by those who profess to be the teachers of truth.

The quotations to the right are accurate in detail, as grayling fishers of experience will concede. The annual movements of these fish occur in much the same way as those of the trout, with the exception of the one being in condition in the cold season and the other in the most genial part of the year. In the spawning season (April and May) they repair to the broad shallows, where the

water-course widens, and the gravelly bottom is plainly apparent. Here they lie in shoals, and, before the national law prohibited the practice, sacrilegious work was often perpetrated with the net by the poaching fraternity, who, unfortunately, are much better acquainted with the habits of their quarry than is generally credited. After their sexual functions have been in due course accomplished, they seek the best feeding positions vacant, near the sides and at the tails of sharp streams, where they lie at the bottom, ever on the look-out for what the stream may bring down, such as the larvæ of the several orders of large water flies and other aquatic insects—the water-spider and freshwater shrimps (*Gammarus aquaticus*). The grayling, though a delicately organized fish, nevertheless possesses a strong stomach, superior to that of the trout, which enables it to digest insects inhabiting shell-like cases, and other molluscos food. After their health has been somewhat restored by a short location here, the approach of the hot months drives them to the seclusion of the deepest water, near the bottom of which they lie, where the heat is less felt. We believe this to be the main secret as to the suitable water and locality for these fish, as in these days of artificial propagation and experimental ventures in the transportation of fish, it has been often observed that when the water is not adapted for the peculiarities of this fish, they have invariably descended at the approach of warm weather, never to re-ascend. There are many waters that do not at present contain grayling, that are perfectly adapted to their peculiarities. Streams having lime spring sources are found to be particularly suited to these delicate fish. In the Canadian lakes the trout lie, whenever the weather is oppressive, in masses near the cool springs, especially when these are situated at the bottom of the water. Grayling in this country are found to flourish in similar situations, but in more genial climes they cannot be preserved, being a

northern fish. In early autumn they leave the still deeps and congregate upon the lower running streams, where the water is from three to four feet deep. Here, in the wake of piles encumbered with sticks, etc., they sport in company, and are to be allured by fancy artificials, even when there are no flies on the water. At this period they afford really excellent sport when fished for by the sunk fly, as well as by the other methods of angling for them, described elsewhere. As the year advances, the vitality and vigor of the grayling increases, and by the time the sharp frosts of winter set in, whenever the water is in fit condition, they afford exceptionally good sport. Grayling often attain a large size; they are frequently taken from two to four pounds in the rivers most noted for them, which are as follows: the Avon, Itchen, and Test, in Hampshire; the Dove, Wye, and Derwent, in the Midlands; the Aire and Swale, in Yorkshire; and the Lugg and Teme. This fish has recently been turned into the Clyde and Tweed, where it appears to flourish.

PIKE\* frequent the more shallow portions of the water when they are in quest of food, as also for spawning purposes. The smaller fish naturally throng to the thinner waters for better security, and the larger fish of prey lurk in their vicinity, as the vicious dog-fish do near the herring shoals, upon the shelving strand. Pike also love to be concealed in weed beds, amongst the friendly shades of water plants, from which they pounce upon their unsuspecting prey. In rivers and running water, like trout, they generally take up an advantageous position before a jutting portion of the river's bank, or in a deep curl of water at a sudden bend. These places are favorite haunts, and are sure to be tenanted by either large or small fish.

---

\* The pike (*Esox lucius*) of England is identical with the true pike of America.

Both in winter and summer the pike is a solitary and unsocial fish. They spawn in the spring, April and May being the usual months, but the spawning period varies with the locality to a certain extent. As pairing time approaches they repair to creeks, side-ditches, backwaters, etc., and in the case of lakes and ponds to the seclusion afforded by weed and reed beds. In the fall of the year the wanderers congregate in a social sort of way, in the still and deepest parts of the water, or in some favorite nook which may have been an annual place of assembly since it was originally formed. The ova of the pike hatch quickly, thirty-two or thirty-three days being the period. Their fry are also of rapid growth. In the pickerel or jack stage they devour enormous quantities of food, if favorable. At a very early stage their vicious propensities are exemplified. We once placed three pickerel, scaling from two to three and a half pounds, in a small pond, in which had been turned some fourscore store fish, the majority being carp of small size, the remainder tench and perch. Upon being netted at the end of the year, there was not a single carp in the pond; two-thirds of the perch were left, as were also a few of the tench. The pickerel had meanwhile developed into respectable pike, scaling five and three-quarters to six and one-quarter pounds weight. Belief in the ancient doggerel, anent the natural propagation of pike, eels, and other fish, from the pickerel weed, chopped-hair, etc., it is said is not as yet fully dispelled amongst the lower agricultural orders in some parts of Scotland, and in several English counties.

Walton, who invariably quotes the German naturalist, Gesner, upon the natural history of fresh-water fish, instead of relying solely upon his own personal investigations, affirms his belief in these and kindred superstitions, characteristic of our forefathers. The same absurd non-

sense is credited in the "Piscatory Eulogies," where we find the following:

"Say, canst thou tell how worms of moisture breed,  
Or pike are gendered of the pickrel weed?  
How carp without the parent seed renew,  
Or slimy ceis are form'd of genial dew?"

To indulge in day-dreams about the abnormal instincts and habits of animalia, would appear to be characteristic of the speculative naturalist of past ages, vague theories being treated as solid facts, and so set forth for the acceptance of credulous readers.

---

## CHAPTER II.

### THE HABITS AND HAUNTS OF FISH

**THE BARBEL, CARP, TENCH, BREAM, ROACH, DACE, GUDGEON, CHUB, EEL, POPE OR RUFFE.**

The BARBEL\* (*Barbus vulgaris*) is a gregarious fish. It spawns in May and the beginning of June, and is found in the sluggish parts of slow-running streams. It not unfrequently attains a weight of ten or twelve pounds, and specimens are occasionally taken measuring three feet in length. Its fins, especially the pectoral, are exceptionally large, and by their aid it can breast the most powerful currents, and is, moreover, capable of affording good sport to the angler; owing to its excessive pertinacity of life and strength. The Thames and Trent are the best rivers for this fish. It is rather local in this country, but is occasionally found abundant in the waters of low-lying counties. Large barbel are most prevalent about Shepperton, Walton, and Weybridge upon the Thames, where they have been taken scaling fifteen or

---

\* The barbel is not a native of our waters.

sixteen pounds or more. They abound in the Trent for many miles about and below Nottingham. During the hot months, after spawning (which operation is effected amongst weeds, roots, etc., around which substances they entwine the ova in a rope-like form) they seek deep slow-running streams, near the bottom of which they lie. A cold climate does not appear to suit the barbel. In more southern latitudes, as in the Danube and the Rhine, it is said to occasionally reach fifty or even sixty pounds. In Scotland this fish does not appear at all. With the advent of frosty weather in the fall, they leave the still deeps and holes, and may be found at the bends of rivers, near bridges, flood-gates, locks, and weirs, which form their haunts during the winter season. Here they are often taken, in favorable circumstances, in heavy quantities by practical adepts. The mouth of the barbel is situate much lower than is the case with most fish. It is a flat-stomached fish, with a hog-shaped head and snout. The fore-barbs, or wattles, attached to the end of the latter, and appended to the corners of the mouth, are plentifully encompassed by nerves, which serve as feelers to the fish whilst foraging amongst gravel, etc., in the bed of the water. It belongs to the carp family, and is noted for its subtlety and wiliness. Barbel are in the best condition in August and September.

CARP (*Ciprinus carpio*)\* do not thrive in northern latitudes; like the barbel, they attain much greater dimensions in temperate and southern climes. It is supposed by some that the whole carp family are not indigenous to this country, which may be very probable; but nothing is certainly known of the period or source of their original introduction. The naturalist Linnæus affirms that carp were first brought to England about the year 1600, but this assuredly is erroneous, as in Dame

---

\* This variety or scaled species has been introduced in our waters.

Juliana Berner's book on angling, published in 1496, we have the following mention of the carp: "It is a dayntious fysshe, but there bene but faue in Englund, and therefore I wryte the lesse of hym."

The carp is a vegetarian, feeding upon the more tender parts of aquatic plants, and the growth of algæ and fungus with which aquatic vegetation is often overspread. Insects and larvæ also are taken by them. Where carp run large they are anything but "dayntious," as any vegetable garbage and refuse will be eagerly and voraciously devoured by them when cast within their reach.

In the winter season carp lie partially buried in the mud at the bottom of the lakes and ponds in which they delight. Their ova becomes matured about June; they deposit their spawn upon weeds, etc. These fish have the curious habit of emitting but a small part of their eggs at once; thus they are taken for some months containing more or less mature spawn, the male fish having a similar characteristic. The carp, like most leather-mouthed fish, have teeth in the throat—these, in the instance of the common carp very much resemble the molar teeth of a quadruped. They are very long-lived, and many remarkable instances of this are recorded. There are many varieties of these fish now common in this country. The Crucian and Prussian variety are abundant in many waters. These are much shorter and more plate-like in form than the ordinary carp.

TENCH\* (*Tinca vulgaris*), like carp, flourish best in weedy ponds or deep pits, and though in very sluggish rivers they may take up their quarters upon some quiet reach, they are seldom found abundant in these situations. In the winter months these fish lie dormant in the mud at the bottom of the water, as we have already

---

\* So far as I am aware, we have no fish on this side of the Atlantic corresponding to the tench, of which in fact but one species is known to exist.



stated to be the case with the carp; indeed, their main habits and instincts correspond closely with those just ascribed to the carp. The chief points of distinction are that the tench possesses greater powers of suction, is considerably less in size (seldom attaining more than six or seven pounds in our home waters), and is inferior in cunning. The body of the tench is abundantly supplied with mucous, which is generally supposed to have medicinal properties. This would be difficult to prove, and we very much doubt whether it ever has been satisfactorily established. Both carp and tench are eminently tenacious of life, and able to breathe with the most meagre supply of oxygen. The young of both fish are also of marvellously quick growth, where food is plentiful, and the surroundings are favorable to their well-being. The golden variety of tench, now acclimatized here, is being artificially bred and distributed upon an extensive scale.

BREAM\* (*Abramis brama*) abound to profusion in many of our lakes, rivers, and canals, as also in small confined sheets of water throughout the land. There are two principal British varieties of these fish, viz., the common or carp bream, and the white bream, or breamflat. There are numerous hybrids among bream, as, indeed, is the case with the whole carp tribe. These are occasionally taken for new varieties, and new species. In early morning, with the first gleam of the sun in the east, the

---

\* The reader must not confound the English bream with our sunfish, which is called in many sections of the United States, a bream. The bream of the text belongs to the carp family, and the sunfish to the perches. We have two well recognized varieties (both carps) of the bream in this country; the *Notemigonus chrysoleucus*, commonly called shiner, the habitat of which is from New England to Minnesota; the *N. Americanus*, or Southern bream, ranging from Virginia to Georgia. Both of these fish are similar in their habits to the English varieties, loving weedy streams and ponds. The former, *N. chrysoleucus*, resembles a shad and grows to a weight of a pound and a half. The saltwater porgee is sometimes called a bream in the Southern States.

bream, in common with most fish of like order, are to be observed playfully gambolling and turning over, so that their most frequent haunts are easily discernible to the early riser. When a bream suddenly descends from near the surface of the water, unlike any other fish, it causes bubbles to appear upon the water immediately above it. This must be owing to its peculiar formation. It probably emits a certain portion of oxygen by the exertion. The teeth of the bream, as with other aquatic vegetarians, are in the throat, there being, in the case of the common bream, a series of five upon each bone, a double complement of these being possessed by the white variety. Bream spawn in July. They always frequent the deepest parts of the water they inhabit, and are fond of weedy quarters. About the middle of October they are in the height of condition. It is not in every likely-looking place upon a river known to contain bream that they are found. They are rather migratory as well as gregarious, and are given to roam, changing their haunts, for no apparent reason, for an indefinite period. These fish seldom attain more than six or seven pounds weight, though specimens are occasionally taken scaling considerably more.

ROACH\* (*Leuciscus rutilus*), are also gregarious, congregating and swimming together in shoals. They are generally numerous at the lower portions of trout streams, in water from three to five feet in depth, and of very moderate velocity. They feed upon aquatic insects, worms, the larvæ of flies, and also on certain vegetable

---

\* The names, Roach, Dace, and Chub are inextricably mixed in the popular nomenclature of fishes in this country. All of them are applied indiscriminately to one and the same fish. I am enabled, however, to state from personal knowledge that the roach of the Atlantic States is almost a counterpart of its English congener, in physical outline, at least so far as may be judged by examinations of several exquisite and accurate drawings of the latter fish.

matter. These fish spawn in May and the early part of June. When thus ill-conditioned they are particularly rough to the touch. Their ova is deposited amongst the roots of weeds or upon some projecting or submerged substance there may be in the bottom of the water. The length of a full-sized, well-conditioned roach ranges from ten to twelve inches; but, being a broad and thick-set fish, the weight is greater than its length would indicate. Upon some waters, a fish of this description, measuring ten inches, will generally scale about three-quarters of a pound. They are of marvellously slow growth, as compared with other fish of the same order. The roach is not esteemed as an article of diet.

DACE, DARE, OR DART.\*—These fish are gregarious, and are common in our clear streams, especially in the south. They frequent slow running waters, where they feed upon the larvæ of insects, worms, etc., and towards September rise well at the fly, and are to be readily taken. There are other species of what are designated coarse fish that rise at the fly, such as the perch, chub, and pike, but these are not nearly so partial to surface feeding as dace. Though these fish generally prefer clear water, they are found plentiful in the polluted portions of large rivers. Their spawning time is April and May. Dace will flourish wherever trout abound, which fish they resemble in their general habits. They seldom reach more than fourteen ounces in weight. Though common to running waters, they will flourish in still pools and ponds. The same observation may be applied with equal truth to the

---

\* The daces proper of our waters are of small size and are used mainly for bait. The names chub, fallfish, roach and dace are often applied to one and the same fish, and this custom is apt to mislead the American reader of the text. The dace is a favorite fish with the British anglers as they take the fly during the fall months and in December and January.

GUDGEON.\*—These little fish, in common with minnows and other small fry, frequent main rivers and tributaries alike in incredible numbers, migrating in shoals. They are extremely prolific. Their chief use to the angler is for bait for the larger species of fish.

CHUB† (*Leuciscus cephalus*).—Chub frequent deep and rapid waters. They rank among the very coarsest of fresh-water fish; nevertheless, they are not to be found in stagnant, foul, or habitually discolored water; indeed, it is rarely they flourish except where they have the advantage of a constant supply of food, as is the case in the vicinity of the rapid passage of a volume of water. In lakes, ponds, or canals, these fish are rarely found. Their “holts” in small rivers are usually deep still pools, those sheltered by overhanging trees or bushes being their chosen resort, especially when the stream is powerful just

---

\* The only counterpart we have, from an angling standpoint, of this little fish, on the natural history and capture of which pages have been written by English angling authors, is the gudgeon of the waters of Baltimore; when in season many dozens are caught on a tide with a light rod and running tackle. The fish of the text belongs to the carp family and delights in running streams, while those of the United States are caught in deep tidal waters and are apparently anadromous.

† The nearest approach we have in the United States to the chub of England is the *Semiotilus corporalis*, commonly called chub in this country. This fish does not differ in habits, mode of feeding, etc., from that one described by the author. I have found it, in small streams, to be extremely shy and to insure success have been compelled to creep stealthily to the bank and to avoid casting a shadow over the water. When hooked it will give delightful play, often leaping once or twice out of the water, but its resistance is of short duration. They are struck mostly in the riffles where they take the fly somewhat fiercely, the reverse occurring in the quiet pool, their action then being somewhat sluggish. I have caught them weighing two pounds, but they reach nearly double that size when their habitat is the deep stretches of water above the dams of the upper rivers of the Northern States. It is this fish and its congeners that are rapidly disappearing in the States east of the Alleghenies under the onslaught of the ferocious black bass.

near the head of the pool. In larger and wider ones the fish lie in the streams when gently flowing, and near the shelving or well-wooded bank. Sandy or gravelly bottoms are preferred by the chub. They are seldom or never found where the bed of the water is of mud or loam; they, like the grayling, find food in the gravel and sandy bed. They feed, as is the case with the whole *cyprinus* family, upon aquatic plants, and have, in common with their order, fully developed throat teeth. Their food also consists of worms, flies, beetles, grubs, and, indeed, everything that in general forms food for their more aristocratic fellow-tenants of the stream; and they are to be taken with almost every conceivable bait, from a minnow to a midge. Their edible qualities are bad, but when rubbed with saltpetre immediately after being killed and cleansed, they form tolerable fare.

EELS.—There are two distinct varieties of these fish that are indigenous to this country, viz:—the sharp-nosed species (*Anguilla vulgaris*) which, as far as can be ascertained, is migratory in its habits, and the broad-nosed. The former annually descend to the mouths of the rivers they inhabit to find brackish water. This excursion is made in the autumn, the main object being to find water of the right temperature for vivifying their ova, as, unlike all other species of fresh-water fish, they would appear to require a higher rate of temperature for this purpose. It is well-known that the water in the tidal part of rivers is several degrees higher in temperature than that nearer the source, owing, first, to the greater elevation of the sources; and, secondly, to the contact of two fluids of different densities, as salt and fresh water, which causes an increase of temperature of at least two degrees. The passage of the adult fish, during or immediately after a flood down-stream in the autumn, is well-known to the owners of fisheries upon our large rivers, who place traps for their capture. The immense numbers that inhabit

some waters is simply incredible. But if the downward passage of eels is remarkable, it shrinks into insignificance when compared with the spring ascents. Many accounts of the marvellous number of young elvers that pass up stream in the spring months, have been given by various writers upon this and kindred subjects.

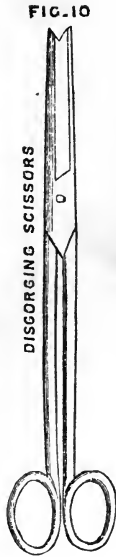
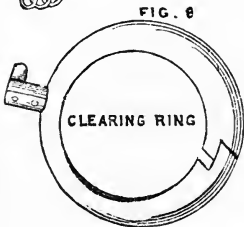
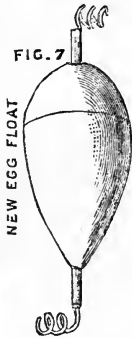
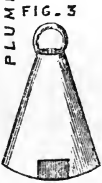
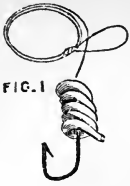
The broad-nosed species do not ascend the rivers, but locate in holes and crevices in masses of stone. In the winter they lie dormant in the mud. This variety is not esteemed as an article of diet. The young of the eel are eagerly devoured by all fresh-water fish, including the trout and salmon, and even the adult eels themselves, hence it is that so few live to become developed. Eels are vicious devourers of fish spawn, and were they to multiply to any great extent, the effect upon the higher order of fish would be disastrous. Eels were long considered viviparous, but this is now known to be erroneous.

The spawn of the migratory or sharp-nosed variety is usually deposited and buried in sand beds, that of the non-migratory species is deposited in the mud gradually, during a considerable length of time, which accounts for the intermittent passage of the young elvers or fry for months in the spring of the year. Whenever there has been incessant heavy rain, eels turn out of their hiding places to feed upon worms, the larvæ of insects, *encrustia*, etc., and in the case of the larger specimens upon small fish. Mild winters are favorable for their capture, as in the flushed waters that are then usual, they are always on the forage for food. Poachers often take the best of these fish upon their night-lines, as eels are undeniably nocturnal in disposition.

THE PERCH\* (*Perca fluviatilis*) flourishes in both stag-

---

\* The perch of English waters is the yellow perch of America (*Perca Americana*). The white variety (*Morone Americana*), esteemed by us as a table and semi-game fish, is not named by the angling writers of England.







nant and running water. In the former they are more commonly numerous; the river perch are, however, larger, and far more wily. The perch are to an extent a gregarious fish, moving in shoals. Deep holes and the slower reaches of large rivers are their chosen resorts. They are extremely hardy, flourishing in the foul water of road-side pits, etc. They spawn in April and May. They are extremely prolific, the number of eggs carried by an adult fish being over 200,000. The spawn is deposited in an unbroken band or festoon of eggs, which is generally entwined around weed stems, etc. Moles, ducks, water-fowl, and vermin eagerly devour it.

Perch are of slow growth, considering the fact of their being such voracious feeders. In confined places, where the water is overstocked, they gradually diminish in size, until they range to almost the size of a minnow. To keep a stock of good perch in a confined water, they should be netted every alternate season, the larger only of the fish being returned; the smaller may be distributed elsewhere as store fish. Yearling perch average two and a half inches in length when fed plentifully. In favorable circumstances perch acquire an unusual weight, five or six pounds being sometimes reached by them when the supply of food has been good, and the surroundings favorable. The remaining member of the *Percidæ* species is the

POPE OR RUFFE\* (Rough).—This fish is extremely partial to canals and muddy pools. The more sluggish running waters often contain vast quantities of them. It is inferior to the perch, both as regards size and the quality of its flesh. It is an equally voracious feeder, and affords good sport to the youthful fisherman where it

---

† This fish is not known to our native anglers. It differs from our white perch mainly in being of a darker color, approaching brown, on the sides and back, and having a continuous dorsal fin instead of two, the latter being a distinguishing mark of our perches.

abounds, it being readily taken with the coarsest tackle. Ruffe spawn in April, and, like perch, multiply rapidly. Pike and other large fish feed upon them. Both the form and the habits of this fish are similar to those of the perch. Its average length is four inches, and it very seldom exceeds six. For live bait for pike it is often in great request, on account of its hardness and attractive color.

---

### CHAPTER III.

#### BOTTOM FISHING (GENERAL).

##### POND-FISHING FOR PERCH, ETC., GUDGEON, DACE, AND ROACH FISHING.

Under this heading we purpose dealing with each individual fish sought after by the bottom fisher. The constant increase in this class of anglers has of late become so noteworthy that any work on modern methods of angling would be signally incomplete were this important branch ignored. Still-water or pond fishing is associated with the earliest recollections of the majority of fishermen, whether fly, mid-water, or bottom fishers. We shall, therefore, commence with this simple phase of the gentle art. Worm fishing may be practised successfully for almost every variety of fish in fresh water, not excluding even the trout and salmon. We have devoted a separate chapter to worm fishing for the first-named. The usual objects of the bottom fisher in still water are what are known as coarse fish, ranging from the pike down to the perch and gudgeon, and the arrangement of the tackle employed varies both according to the kind of fish it is desired to take, and the lay of the water. Float

fishing is the chief resort of the bottom fisher in standing water. Almost anything in the shape of a rod will answer for this purpose, the only essential being stiffness and strength. Bamboo is the best material for a general bottom rod, a variety of top joints of different strength and length adapting it for both heavy and light work. Before taking the fish in detail we would enjoin the attention of the tyro to the following hints:\*—

Don't unduly expose either the person or the rod by restless movements upon the edge of the water.

Avoid disturbing as much as is possible the surface of the fish's element by incessant movements of the float and bait.

Never employ a larger float, and therefore more sinkers, than is absolutely requisite.

Always ascertain the precise depth of the water it is intended to fish before commencing, so that the bait may come within the ken of the fish.

See that the lure is placed upon the hook in as natural a manner as is possible, viz., by threading the worm, if a worm is used, up the centre, leaving a portion of each extremity free.

When a fish is hooked, do not suddenly, as Homer has it, "lift it quivering to the skies." There is no need for transporting your "finny prize" in a strictly perpendicular direction. The thing to do is gently tug the quarry to the bank before leaving the water, as by so doing the pulling power, without the addition of the weight of the capture, is placed upon the tackle. To work out the diagram given, we commence with

PERCH FISHING.—The first consideration for the youthful aspirant, after fixing upon a likely spot, where

---

\* We commend these practical rules to all anglers, young or old, who delight in bottom fishing. Many of them are apt to fish "loose" in deep waters.

the water is most discolored\* (which is generally in the vicinity of weeds), is the depth. This may be easily ascertained by plumbing, by means of a scrap of sheet lead or wire, rolled round the hook, or without this by observing the float when properly weighted, as in standing water it lies on one side when the sinkers touch the bottom. After thus accurately taking the depth, the tackle should be so arranged as to admit of the lure reaching within three inches or so of the bottom. A few pieces of turf, containing worms, may be put in the water before "rigging up" the tackle.† The vigorous action of these, on being suddenly introduced into a strange element, answers admirably in attracting the notice of and collecting the fish. A small, well-scoured dew or lob worm should then be carefully threaded upon the hook. The float should be cork, not colored. The brilliantly daubed article usually offered for sale ought always to be assiduously avoided. A common bottle cork is not to be surpassed, and, if the quill that pierces the cork be vermilion-tipped, so much the better. By the use of a small forked stick the rod may be suspended upon the bank, whilst the owner looks out and prepares a new place, in case a change may become desirable, or two rods may be used. When fish run large, for better security, a pot-hook shaped iron inserted in the ground at the full extremity of the rod will render all safe. Large hooks should be used, as by such voracious and bold biters as perch an ordinary worm hook for trout fishing will be paunched without difficulty.

In rivers, in the early part of the season, perch are generally found in gently-flowing water, not very deep.

---

\* Clear water is best for perch fishing in our waters. When it is riled, the fish cease to go in shoals and are caught, only here and there, generally a single fish at a time.

† Ground baiting is not followed to any degree by American anglers. Its value cannot be disputed, particularly in black bass waters.

As the season advances, they locate under hollow banks and by whirling eddies, or smooth, gravelly-bottomed swims, but towards September and October they frequent the deepest parts of the river, near roots, sunken sticks, or in other fastnesses. Perch are gregarious; care should, therefore, be taken not suddenly to disturb a hole or swim. They will run eagerly at the minnow, especially in the summer months, but the method by which most sport may be derived from them is to cast for them with a trio of artificial red palmers or caterpillars (double-hooked), attached to a moderately strong fly cast, one at the point and the others mounted upon gut lengths, and attached as droppers. These are used as small flies, just as when working them for trout, with this exception—when a fish is hooked no action is taken whatever. The hooked fish will quickly be shown, and will work the remaining palmers infinitely better than the rodster can, and, incredible as it may seem, by this means each lure will have secured its capture in a very short time after the first was hooked. The difficulty of landing these contributions adds in no small degree to the diversion.\* It sometimes happens when the casts are full fine, or the fish extra large, that a loss of a portion of the gut, together with its appendage, is experienced; but this is an unusual occurrence, more particularly if sound and strong casts be used.

The best way to land a string of perch is to secure the endmost one in the net first, and when this is done the rest seldom get into mischief, and are generally easily landed. There are numerous methods of extracting perch, and if it be true that the amount of diversion derived from sport is in proportion to the novelty introduced, perch fishing presents important attractions. The arti-

---

\* When black bass do not run over a pound or two in weight, I invariably use the method of the text; especially if the first fish chances to be hooked on the "hand" fly; the "end" fly in this case plays beautifully and, nine times out of ten, a second bass will strike it.

ficial spinning bait and spoon, the roving live bait, the fly,\* both artificial and natural, may be successfully used. The more advanced methods of bottom fishing may also be resorted to in the case of the perch; indeed, this is a matter of necessity in river fishing, where the large fish exhibit a degree of wariness akin to that of the acute carp. Whipping with the cad-bait, fresh-water shrimp, and other aquatic insects in nymphæ form also affords capital sport, even in clear water, under the overhanging banks, trees, or bushes, amongst well-educated shoals of these fish.

THE GUDGEON (*Genus Gobia*) are very prevalent in slowly-running waters, those having gravelly or sandy bottoms being the best adapted for them. They increase wonderfully, and like most small fish, they spawn twice and often three times in the year. Upon most of our large rivers, as well as upon the majority of our small streams, gudgeon fishing is a popular pastime in its season, which commences with July and ends with September. The following is the system mainly resorted to upon the Thames and Trent. A punt is moored in a moderate flowing stream, four or perhaps five feet in depth. The bottom is disturbed by a large and heavy metal rake,† brought for the purpose, when the fish (which are gregarious, going in large shoals), congregate in great numbers in the water thus discolored to feed upon the grubs and larvæ of insects. But little skill is needed to catch this fish. Its excessive gullibility is well known. The meaning expressed by being "gudgeoned," is, as everybody

---

\* The American yellow perch will take the fly freely. I have caught them on the rocky shoals of Lake Champlain and in the rivers of the Middle States, on almost every variety of black bass flies.

† A most excellent plan to adopt when fishing for flounders in salt water. It is used by a few New York City anglers, and in no other section to my knowledge.

knows, being easily deceived. Poets, too, adopt the bold little gudgeon as an analogy to convey the same impression, as Gay serenely sings—

“ What gudgeons are we men,  
Every woman’s easy prey ;  
Though we felt the hook, again  
We bite, and they betray ! ”

Notwithstanding all this, the finest tackle and a nine or ten-foot rod, stiff and light, are essential to moderate success. The telescope Japanese bamboo rods answer well for these fish, though we cannot commend their use for fish of heavier calibre. The finest possible line should be used; as to whether it be twist or plait is immaterial. A light cork, or better still, a small quill float, and small No. 12 hook, complete the equipment. Some fishermen advocate the use of extra strong tackle to meet exceptional emergencies; as for instance, when angling for gudgeon they will employ a hook and line equal to landing a heavy tench, perch, or chub. That this is folly is proved by the result of a trial of the two systems in the weight of fish taken. If you wish to take perch or chub, why not angle for them? Do not use unsuitable tackle upon any pretext. We have often known anglers spoil all prospects of sport by their stupidity in this respect, rigging up trout baits with gimp because of the probable presence of a pike, for instance, in which case the result is, generally speaking, simply *nil*.

The best bait for these fish are worms, gentles, and the cad-bait grub, the latter found in its sheath at the bottom of the water. The small worm known in the Midlands as the “ Cockspur ” is the favorite lure, and the brandling, too, often does great execution. In striking even a gudgeon, a little art and aptness tell marvellously in a day’s fishing. No slack line should intervene between the rodster and the feeding fish, as, though a bold biter, it is equally energetic in rejecting the bait when

the hard substance of the hook is detected. A rapid striker will hook two fish to a dilatory angler's one. The bait, which should be very minute, should be so arranged as to just escape the bottom.

From an edible point of view, the gudgeon is superior to many, we may say the majority, of fishes that inhabit fresh water.

DACE.—This fish seldom attains more than three-quarters of a pound weight, though occasionally it may reach one pound. Dace are numerous in most trout streams, more especially in those of Wales and the southern counties of England. They afford excellent sport when feeding in sufficient quantities, though they are occasionally very annoying to the fly-fisher for trout; indeed, they are to be taken in large numbers by a gaudily dressed fly, towards the end of the summer. The small palmers (red, gray, and black), bumble, and red tags, etc., are the description that find most favor in the eyes of this fish, though sometimes they are by no means partial in this respect.

To the fly-angler for dace, we would observe that when these fish are fastidious in rising, a gentle, or a wasp-grub, or even a tiny strip of flannel, when placed so as to hide the hook, will render the thing effective; but the usual mode of angling for these fish is by bottom fishing. The tackle and hooks hereafter recommended for roach are equally well adapted for dace fishing, and as both are found upon the same swims, the angler frequently extracts a mixed bag. Like the gudgeon, the dace is a bold biter, and is sharp, often incredibly so, in discharging the lure if not struck speedily. It is unlike the roach in the latter characteristic. As regards gameness the dace has considerable repute. Bait fishing for dace is mostly followed, and is most productive in winter. His flesh is not, however, much appreciated for the table.



For live bait fishing for pike the dace is valued, and justly so.

THE ROACH\* (*Genus rutilus*) is rightly awarded no mean position in angling literature. This cannot be said to be on account of its weight and size, or its edible qualities, but purely because of the skill requisite for its capture. The early authors we know write differently, and their statements may then have been justified by their comparatively unsophisticated fish, and are still in the case of under-fed pond fish. With river roach, however, the case is widely different; to bag a decent take, the rodster must be a practical hand of no mean attainments and experience. This branch of angling is so popular in these days that upon all the most noted rivers these fish are marvellously well schooled, so much so upon certain waters as to rival in wiliness the trout upon some streams; but the accomplished roach fisher will make a respectable bag, even in adverse circumstances, always supposing the fish are there to catch. With regard to the suitable equipage, the rod demands the first attention. This should be stiff, light, and of fair length. Some anglers use implements of prodigious dimensions. We recommend an East India cane, of ten or twelve feet, as being well adapted for every useful purpose. Some capital roach rods are made from lancewood, red deal being employed for the butt-piece. When good material is employed, a rod of the following dimensions for a three-part rod will combine lightness with strength. The diameter of the ferrules at the top of the butt joint

---

\* The roach of our rivers will take the fly, if small and bright in color. Few of them, however, are caught by this method of fishing. On the Delaware River from the piers in the lower part of the city of Philadelphia, large quantities are sometimes caught through the ice by the use of light rods, small hooks, and dough bait. They are small in size, seldom exceeding seven inches in length, but their shyness is equal to the English fish.

should be  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch inside, that of the end of the middle piece  $\frac{5}{16}$  of an inch, reel fittings and terminating ferrules on the foot of the butt about  $1\frac{1}{8}$  or  $1\frac{1}{4}$ , in diameter. This ratio will be found to form a well-proportioned taper from the hand upwards, the wood, of course, tapering so as to fit the ferrules without the metal being sunk in the joints. Incalculable disasters ensue from a non-observance of this all-important provision. The wood of the immense majority of rods manufactured, being robbed at its weakest point to accommodate the ferrules, leads to frequent breakages. We deal more fully with this subject elsewhere. Roach are noted for their excessive shyness and quickness of vision, therefore in clear water it is essential to exhibit as little of the rod and person as possible, as in addition to this they are adepts, when they understand the situation, at extracting neatly the bait from the hook, and leaving the mere skin or frame behind.

We remember keeping for some years a large roach amongst other fish, in a tank fed by a small rill of spring water. Upon our casting a score of house flies or gentles in a batch, one only having a small hook concealed carefully, Mr. Roach would invariably absorb unhesitatingly all and every insect but the identical specimen containing the hidden hook, nothing of which but the point would be visible, although other and smaller fish would exhibit no such scruples. It is this special caution of the roach that calls into play so much care and tact on the part of the rodster. The line should be of the very finest possible texture and undressed. Raw silk is the best material for firmness and strength. When angling with fine line, more especially is it requisite to keep proper command over the bait by retaining little slack line from the tip of the rod downwards. Many advantages ensue from the use of an extra fine line, retaining of course full requisite strength, both in live bait, bottom, and surface fishing. As every angler will admit, the less the surface of the line,

the less resistance offered by the air, and the greater chances of success and deception. The hook is also a point of the greatest importance, and one to which meagre attention is but usually paid. A bad or defective hook is an abomination to the user; to employ one is as detrimental to sport as the use of pasteboard bullets would be for deer stalking. As we have devoted a separate chapter to the consideration of hooks, we shall merely quote an instance from our own personal experience, anent this subject.

In company with an angling acquaintance, we were fishing upon a once celebrated roach reach on the Trent, not many miles from Burton. Our companion was rather positive in his ideas of hooks. He inherited a notion from his sire, who it was asserted was the best roach fisher of his day, that the weight and dimensions of one's takes ranged in a certain degree according to the weight of metal and dimensions of the hook employed, the heresy of which doctrine will be obvious to any modern disciple of the rod. The descendant of the redoubtable rodster favored a No. 8 Carlisle hook, and nothing we could advance appeared to convince him of the absurdity of his prejudiced opinions. Finally, we arranged to fish the matter out, hence it was that we repaired to a noted spot upon the noble Trent. Circumstances were favorable to sport, and as the swim had been nicely and judiciously baited the day previous, we quickly did some execution. After an hour or two's fishing, we had gained gradually but at an increasing rate on our antagonist; he accounted for this by affirming that we had monopolized the best position, on which we "swapped" places. The main result, however, was still the same. Our companion now suggested that the secret lay in our bait, on which our reserve was immediately placed at his disposal. Still the same result appeared, though in a much more marked degree, and our friend now became irritable, and his

patience collapsed, together with his rod and tackle. "Luck's dead against me, and it's useless fighting against fate," was the explanation tendered, while the process of unjointing was being gone through. We now thought it high time to expostulate by delivering ourselves of our view of the affair, which we speedily did, winding up with an offer to so rig up our friend that he would equal if not rival us. This was finally carried out, and the result showed that with an accurately constructed hook five bites amounted upon the average to four fish, whilst with a badly made or deformed one, the bites, or rather nibbles in this case, yielded but a meagre per centage of captures, the precise number ranging, as a matter of course, according to the size and nature of the hook.

The float should be very light. Another consideration is the substance to mount the hooks upon—whether hair or gut—some anglers preferring one, and some the other.\* There are equally good anglers upon both sides, but the ancient hair, it cannot be denied, is rapidly losing ground before refined gut, which is now imported in such immense quantities from Spain, Sicily, China, and elsewhere, and may be said to be thrice the strength and half the substance of the traditional hair. It is, or should be, the object of the fisherman to reduce his lines and general tackle so as to be as nearly invisible as possible, to which end it is essential that the bulk and surface presentable should be reduced as far as is compatible with strength. It is therefore an advance in the right direction (and one that should have been taken before) to have the gut drawn whilst in its gummy state to as fine proportions as are requisite to meet special cases, for, although we were the originators of the gut-drawing system, we have no hesitation in proclaiming the superiority of the gut drawn accurately, prior to its being set and

---

\* Hair snoods are used by the roach anglers of Philadelphia.

hard, as then it retains its enamelled surface entire. Had this been done a quarter of a century or so ago, the necessity for our oft-repeated researches would not have existed. To assert that hair of any description is equal to even gut of equal thickness, is absurd. The former is not only weak, being hollow, but is given to stretch when strained, and is very susceptible to breaking at knots. It magnifies greatly in the water, and, lastly, absorbs the wet, and swells. On the other hand very little can be urged in regard to the use of the gut that is detrimental. It can now be obtained one-third the thickness of hair, each strand being far superior in point of strength, and when slightly stained the color of the water where it is intended to be used, it is as near being invisible as anything ever discovered. Hair effectually superseded the Indian weed, and silk-worm gut will eventually supersede hair quite as effectually.

To return to our subject. Gentles, pastes, boiled grain, cad or straw bait, and small red worms are most worthy the angler's attention as baits. It is necessary to bait moderately the swim fixed upon the evening previous. We emphasize moderately, because it is the custom to sink so much food for the fish under the appellation of ground-bait, that by the time the expectant rodster "turns up" the whole school will have gorged themselves and dispersed to more secluded nooks to doze off the effects; hence it is the enterprising angler so frequently meets with scant sport. This is often attributed to the influence of passing electricity, whether in the earth, or atmosphere, or may be both; failing this, and a thousand and one other abstruse reasons, the weary angler can always comfort himself and explain to his friends and neighbors that as there was scarcely anything in the swim in question, it followed in the natural course of things that little could be hauled out of it. After baiting judiciously overnight, the fish will have congregated upon

the baited spot at daybreak, if not before, when they are on the forage for breakfast. The object in baiting over night, it must not be forgotten, is merely to produce an appetizing effect on the next morning. If the object in view be to collect fish at any given spot from more distant localities, a good store of ground-bait should be placed there for a day or two previous, always allowing a whole day and night's interval between the final baiting and the time for angling.

Having first ascertained the depth by the method previously described, and arranged the float so as to admit of the bait ranging three or four inches from the bottom of the water, the hand supporting the rod should be ever ready to knock home the hook nicely and carefully, and not too hastily. The correct motion will be readily acquired by practice. Small fish will often take the float under by a jerk, whilst the corpulent members of the same species will scarcely indicate their presence by a disturbance of the float at all, though when these begin to pay their addresses to your lure after this style, it generally proves a favorable symptom for sport; but frequently this exhibition of tenderness and delicacy is merely the result of their style of mouth-work, if we may be allowed to use the expression, the object of which, the angler soon finds out, is to extract the bait from the hook neatly and effectively. Now this is just as bad a sign as the other is a good one, and what is worse, as a general thing, the angler cannot help himself. A plan we have found to answer ourselves in these circumstances is to hang a scrap of the finest and best gut one quarter of an inch below the hook, and upon this excessively fine gut to attach a very small hook (though of small size, to retain good strength of metal), upon this one-half of a maggot or gentle is attached, with a full-sized one, or even two, upon the hook above; this will not fail to "fetch" the most finical of the finny race in question.

Upon hooking a fish, the chief consideration must be how to extract him without damage to the swim,\* dash and bustle being highly unfavorable to the situation, the capture must be consummated as soon as is compatible with the general weal. A judicious change of situation is the best thing under the circumstances, therefore when this can be carried out effectually the fish may be quietly landed in some secluded side spot away from the baited swim.

The persistent voracity of bleak, where they are numerous, is often very annoying to the roach fisher. These small fish, locating near the surface of the water, absorb the lure before it comes within the ken of the portly roach. The effect of this is the more tantalizing when fishing with gentles, or grain of any description. When this petty larceny is going on, resort must be had to the following expedients: Get a fair-sized piece of paste or clay, bell-shaped, the hollow of which must be filled up with dry bran. This should then be attached to the hook and slowly let down. The bran will gradually escape as it sinks, the bright atoms of which, as they are carried down-stream, attract the small fry after them. When clay or paste—the latter is preferable, as it will serve a double purpose in dispersing the bleak and forming ground bait for the roach—is not convenient, a handful† of bran thrown in the water will have the desired effect, though somewhat temporary in its character. To reach the roach at the bottom of a still deep hole, a few gentles should be pressed in clay, leaving small outlets for escape. A few of these will have the desired effects of attracting the notice and exciting the foraging instincts of the larger fish. Whenever roach fail to approach the bait

---

\* The fish in a given water—the swim of fish.

† I have sometimes found that a handful of earth thrown into the water will recall the fish when they have temporarily stopped biting.

presented, a change should be made, if practicable. The wisest policy is, however, to examine the stomach of the first capture, as in the case of fly-fishing.

We have frequently found a predominance of beetles, and even flies, in the stomachs of the fish, which accounted for a previous marked indifference to our bottom bait: we are now speaking of roach in our smaller streams, where the variety of food is much greater. In the lowest portions of the majority of our best trout streams, as, for instance, the tributaries of the Thames and Trent, much execution may be done with the sunk house-fly in September, when these and the wood-fly are blind and feeble, and are scattered as the falling leaves by each gust of wind. Whatever may be the contents of the stomach of the fish, the bait should harmonize as much as possible with what is found to be the inclination of the quarry, whether it be worms, grubs, larvæ of insects, or even weeds, for the roach is occasionally a vegetarian. In the case of the last-named predominancy, paste may be used with advantage, and failing this, silk-weed when procurable. Whatever you do, do not use stale bait, or the sure Nemesis will be stale sport. Roach are excessively nice in their ideas, and the careful panderer to their base desires will reap ample payment for his exertions.\*

---

\* \* \* \* \*

\* I have given the chapter on roach fishing in full, because every line of it is of use to that class of anglers who fish shallow ponds or small lakes and the rivers above tide water, where the sunfish and perch gather in the deep holes. Fine fishing (there is none more delicate than the English method of fishing for roach) is in such waters indispensable to a fair creel. The section on Barbel fishing is omitted, as we have no fish in American waters which can be called its congener.



## CHAPTER IV.

BOTTOM FISHING—*Continued.*

## ANGLING FOR CARP AND CHUB.

The Carp\*—(*Genus Cyprinus*)—is a very wily fish ; in waters much fished they come rather as an exceptional prize to the angler, whose attentions and baits were intended for the allurements of other fish. In well-preserved and little-fished waters they are to be occasionally taken of very large size. The smaller fish, under three pounds or so, are far less cunning.

The angler for carp cannot be too careful and quiet in his movements, nor too skillful in the use of the tackle, which latter cannot possibly be too fine, so long as a reasonable amount of strength is retained. We put forth the above, notwithstanding the exhortations of the early writers as to the use of strong “harnessing” and tackle, for if any fish is gifted with reasoning powers it is the carp; as even when hunger-bitten it displays the most tantalizing caution in what it absorbs. An all-round inspection is invariably given to the bait before it is cautiously closed upon; sometimes the rodster in clear water plainly discerns a yellow monster, which, after describing a number of circles around the bait, traces the line to the surface, which done, the carping critic waves a courteous or contemptuous farewell flourish of his broad tail and is

---

\* Our author certainly presents us with a pleasing picture of the “cuteness” of the carp as a rod fish. American anglers, however, should not become enthusiastic over this fish until, after due trial and a full probation, he is found to merit the honor. Change of habitat sometimes creates a vast difference in the game qualities of a fish, but I am disposed to discredit the possession of such qualities by any fish that feeds, from choice, on a vegetable diet.

gone.\* Occasionally, however, the programme is varied, for instead of clearing up the problem by a judicious investigation up to the source, he proceeds skillfully and artistically to dissect the bait, with a view to clear up the mystery. It is no uncommon thing for the tyro to have the bait taken from the hook for hours without intermission. There cannot be a rational doubt that the fish, when this is the case, fully comprehends the situation. Worms, when well scoured and presented lively and fresh, are good baits. These, however, are to be used at the bottom, ledger† fashion, only instead of the usual large lead, a couple of perforated swan shot should be strung upon the line, and confined to within two-thirds of a yard above the hook and bait, by a small-sized shot attached to the line at the requisite place; or a double knot of the gut may be made to answer the same purpose. Potatoes, when part boiled, we have always found a more killing bait than any other for these fish; they may be used with ledger tackle as above.

Our method of using the above is to rig up three and one-half yards of medium gut—a strongish fly cast will answer this purpose—with three-dropper hook—No. 6, Kendal, are best—on eight or ten-inch gut. These are placed two feet apart, a small shot being fixed to each yard of the main gut line. The whole of the hooks are then to be baited with the prepared potatoes, a piece the size of a cherry being used for each hook, the whole delivered out

---

\* This quality of caution and captiousness in the carp is displayed in other fish. The little “sunny” sometimes exhibits it, and I have seen a black bass flash from out of a depth of six or eight feet of water, nose the artificial fly, and then back water slowly with a sort of “no-you-dont” flirt of the tail, as palpably intelligible as the finger to nose action of the street gamin.

† The ledger consists of a perforated bullet, or a roll of sheet lead, about an ounce or so in weight. When this lies upon the bottom, the line will run freely through it, until checked by a shot fastened about two feet above the hook.

by a careful underhand cast. The bait is pitched well out to an open space on the water's surface. The prospects of sport are improved when the surface is covered with weeds, as the rodster's movements and person are thus obscured. When a bite is indicated, an interval of a few seconds, varying according to circumstances, must be given before striking; a safe signal is the attempt to carry away the bait; the fish has it then within his jaws, and a sharp strike may be given by the time it has progressed a couple of feet or so. In clear open standing water it is essential that the angler should keep as much out of sight, and as stationary upon the bank as possible; an intervening bush or tree trunk may serve as an admirable cover to operate from.

There is an endless variety of bait used for carp, particularly of pastes, which range from a compound of honey and sugar to bread and bran. From our own personal experience, we cannot commend them as being generally efficient, though we have occasionally found them taking, but when a particular kind of bait has been much used, a change is often effective.\*

CHUB (*Genus Leuciscus*).—These fish may be fished for by an almost endless variety of baits. They will take a fly with as much avidity as they will swallow a worm. Bottom fishers chiefly use pastes, graves or scratching, ox-brain, and the worm, when angling specially for these fish. But they are more often caught when angling for other fish, as for barbel, roach, bream, etc. Float-fishing is the best in the winter months, when surface and midwater food is scarce. An old haunt for these fish will often yield great sport upon a sharp frosty day in midwinter. We once took six fish that scaled twenty-seven pounds from one hole on the

---

\* The few paragraphs on fishing for tench and bream are omitted. They possess no interest to anglers on this side of the water.

Dove below Rocester. The scales of some of these were the size of a shilling. Chub are to be steadily headed from the hole when hooked, in order to avoid disturbing the remainder of the school. Ledgering is also a favorite style of angling for them in some waters, the gut and tackle being generally stouter than for other fish, as when a large fish is hooked it is a case of "pull devil, pull baker." A slender weak rod should especially be eschewed, as to keep the fish from the roots in the neighborhood of their haunts, the best built and most evenly proportioned rod procurable is unequal to the occasion; a certain amount of pliant play is necessary to aid the tackle. The best wood to employ for a bottom rod for chub is Ramshorn Ash (English) for butt, hickory for middle joint, and a spliced treble cane top. We have had a rod of this description in use for the last forty years, and it is still as sound and useful as ever. Upon all bottom rods the rings should be upright, and the reel fittings, as in the case of the fly-rod, should be fixed to the bottom of the butt joint, so as to balance as much as possible. To place it a foot or so from the extremity of the joint is foolish, it being just in the way of the rodster's hand when using, and also highly inconvenient generally. In the early autumn months chub are to be taken by dibbing\* (surface fishing) daping (midwater) with live insects, such as the larger of the flies and beetles, humble bees, grasshoppers, etc. Instructions as to

---

\* "Dibbing" or "daping" may be briefly described as follows: Having selected the special pool or hole where the chub are known to be, the angler cautiously approaches the spot, keeping out of sight, and, if necessary, crawling upon his hands and knees. Upon reaching the desired point, he remains quiet for a moment or two to allow the fish to recover their equanimity, if it has been disturbed. Then gently extending the rod over the water, he allows the baited hook to fall from his hand, so that it will hang five to eight inches above the water. Moving it quietly over the spot where he thinks the fish are most plentiful, the bait is dropped quickly on the surface of the water.

the method of using these we have given in a separate chapter. Upon the Thames and Trent of late young frogs have become the favorite bait for chub in their season. The average yield of a day's "chubbing" with these lures is about eight to ten brace of heavy fish. This would often be larger were it not for the smaller fry biting so voraciously, and thereby causing loss of time to the angler, whose duty it is to carefully unhook and return them to the river. It is now no uncommon thing to meet an angler with his bait-kettle converted into a temporary prison for frogs, so popular has become this system of fishing for chub.

The arrangement of tackle is simple: A No. 4 Kendal hook, at the end of two feet of tolerably strong round gut (slightly stained blue) with a scrap of lead wire wound round above the knot. The baby frog is then hooked by a bit of the tough skin at the back of the neck, and carefully lowered from the point of the rod, the weight of the bait taking out the line through the up-standing rings, when allowed, until it reaches the water's surface, the rod meanwhile being kept stationary. The struggling movements of the captive quickly attract the attention of the best and largest fish near, amongst whom the bait is often divided, and, when this is so, great diversion is afforded, as eventually the most voracious is the first to grace the creel. The most artistic method of extracting chub is to fly-fish for them. The surface flies for these fish should be large and gaudy; if nature must be copied at all, bees, wasps, and cock-chafers are the things to reproduce, the ordinary red, black, and dun palmers, having plenty of tinsel upon them, are also killing. Lake or sea-trout fly size are very good, also old May-flies, and indeed anything that is sizable and gaudy. A good strong cast should be used with these, especially when the water is a little turbid, or discolored. The red-haired caterpillar, too, may be used for chub with marked

effect, in the way we recommend for trout and other fish. The attractiveness of any fly or beetle, whether artificial or natural, is greatly enhanced in the eyes of a chub by the addition of a couple of maggots, wasp-grub, or even a narrow strip of wash-leather or white kid upon the hook. Early morning fishing in the autumn is often more productive than mid-day or night; why this is so we can scarcely say. The minnow is as easily taken by these fish as any other bait, and towards twilight in July, August, and September, the chub will "run" at either natural or artificial, so long as the bait is clear, bright, and well spun.

---

## CHAPTER V.

### BOTTOM FISHING—*Continued.*

PUNT FISHING, BANK FISHING, BOTTOM LINES, FLOATS, SILK-WORM GUT, REELS OR WINCHES.

In punt fishing, a much shorter rod should be employed than is necessary for fishing from the bank. The material should be cane. The East Indian variety is by far the best, both for durability and strength. This will be found to stand heavy punishment when other woods give way; indeed, we doubt as to whether the hardest and most solid wood that grows will surpass, or even equal it in these characteristics. Solid wooded rods are not only more apt to break, but to bend permanently, so as to necessitate the reversing of the rings to the opposite side of the joints periodically; but there is one thing we cannot omit calling attention to anent cane rods, and that is their liability to snap at the joints close to the ferrules.

There is, of course, a stiff place where the parts meet in a non-spliced rod, and when an unusual strain is applied to it, the wood immediately, above or below, snaps off short. The nuisance of this may be effectually avoided by inserting a small wooden plug, of some four or five inches in length, in the hollow of the cane, which equalizes the strength of the rod when correctly proportioned throughout. Solid upright rings are preferable to the ordinary loose ones; the most expensive rods are sometimes fitted up with agate mounted rings and tips when intended for trolling purposes. These prevent the rings from being worn by the constant friction. Instead of the ordinary circular-shaped rings, we advise the use of dome or conical ones. These are not liable to entangle one's line, no convenient foothold being presented by their sloping sides. The limp loose line entwines around any projecting substance presented, and any removal of a habitual fouling place must of necessity be a step in the right direction. In boat or punt fishing, the method of procedure varies somewhat upon different waters, the custom in certain districts being to moor across stream, in others in a slanting direction. All we have to say upon this point is, that the great consideration at all times should be how to disturb the water as little as possible. A constant surging against the stationary boat cannot fail to act detrimentally as regards sport in most circumstances.

In fishing from the bank, a tolerably stiff and strong rod should be employed, so as to have power over the quarry when it exhibits a strong and determined desire to retire into some thorny retreat in the bank beneath your feet. The novice quickly advances, upon a few experiences of this nature, in the piscatorial path of knowledge. The first impulse of the inexperienced is to extend the rod over the shoulder, and move backwards, so as to end matters speedily by extracting the hooked fish from his element. Matters take a sudden turn, how-

ever, the fish running in to inspect some festooned retreat. Here he speedily entwines the line in so effective a manner that all communication with his newly found acquaintance is cut off, and when matters stand thus, the cutting process is generally applied to the reel line as a closing act in the scene.\* To land an extra heavy fish with a limber rod would be well nigh an impossibility where the surroundings are unfavorable. The correct way to play a fish from the bank, in a powerful current, or still deep, is to extend the rod over the water, whilst the line is drawn in as rapidly as circumstances will admit; and when a staunch tool is the sustaining medium, the fish cannot possibly, by anything short of a breakage, effect his object. The weapons not infrequently used in bank fishing are not only undesirably heavy and unwieldy, but unnecessarily so. A rod that may be handled deftly, may be used to much greater advantage than one a few feet more in length. A twenty-foot rod,† whether it be a salmon or merely a banking bottom rod, is a cumbersome implement; that, for precision of casting and distance covering, as also for general utility, is easily surpassed by a modest weapon of sixteen to eighteen feet in the hands of a proficient rodster. Personally, we always use bottom rods full two feet below the usual average length, no matter where we may be fishing.

The line is the next subject for consideration. For bottom fishing generally, lines should invariably be as fine, and at the same time as strong, as it is possible to

---

\* The multiplying reel, so useful in the recovery of the line on an incoming fish, is not esteemed by English anglers. While admitting its usefulness in that respect, they claim that it speedily gets out of order, the cogs wearing out quickly. It is evident that the almost perfect American makes have not been handled by our brother anglers over the sea. The new "automatic" reel also has not been introduced to them.

† On the Lea, a river in England, rods of twenty-three feet are used by bank fishermen.



obtain them. Raw unbleached silks are infinitely stronger than the ordinary bleached ones. The fine "dram" silks are equal in strength, and occasionally superior, to the coarser, more bulky, and heavier. With the extra fineness of texture, it is needless for us to add the scarcity of the article is found to range.

Plaited lines should always be preferred to twist, cable-laid though it be; the miseries of a line always twisting and curling being only equalled by the constant breaking of a tender one. A line of one-half the substance of another, if dressed in a proper manner, will be found to be much stiffer and less liable to "kink." With regard to color, in habitually discolored waters, green or sandy-brown should be used; in fine, clear, and open waters, a pale gray or cloud color is the best tint.

No more weights or sinkers must be employed than can possibly be avoided. The same observation also applies to the float. A cork should never be used when it may be effectually substituted by a quill. Lastly, never use even a quill when no float is really needed. We have oftentimes made a first-rate float of a moderate-sized leaf; a sycamore, chestnut, birch, or oak tree, when so situated as to extend over the water, offers admirable facilities for this. A worm, fly, maggot, or what-not is attached in the usual way upon a slightly-weighted gut-line. A leaf is then procured, the shank being split up the center carefully until the middle of the leaf is reached. The "tack" (just below a knot) is then inserted in the incision, which is now closed, and occasionally it may be, for better security, wrapped with a scrap of silk or waxed thread. The leaf is fitted, and found not only to act well as a float, but also in the midst of a bright sunlit water to materially aid the guile, by shading the tackle. The least possible stir or movement is made manifest by the flat and flexible leaf. Porcupine quills are the best floats for all-round work. For heavy water and large fish it is

sometimes necessary to have these mounted with a little cork, but no conspicuously bright coloring matter should be used in its finish. A speck of bright color (say vermilion) certainly aids the eye when placed upon the tip of the quill, so as to project out of the water; indeed, this is a wrinkle that every float-fisher is not acquainted with. The new luminous \* floats are very useful for special purposes, though we cannot say we think it probable they will ever become generally used, float-fishing in the dark not being at present a popular pastime.

The runners appended to the float should be of rubber; these, being flexible, fit any ordinary-sized quill. The non-flexible runners are a nuisance, and should ever be avoided. They are always cracking when dry, and are highly inconvenient in more ways than one.

The best and strongest gut (silkworm for piscatorial purposes) is round and smooth, clear as window-glass, or as the limestone spring. The milky-white glaring gut, so often met with, should be studiously avoided. No fair means will take out the white glare from a batch of pearly gut. Boiling dye will effect the purpose, but the strength and sterling usefulness of the stuff will have so deteriorated as to render it practically worthless. The opaque silkworm gut is naturally found to be inferior in point of strength; four lengths of the transparent and clear variety are found to be equal to five of the white and brighter kind of similar thickness. Spanish gut is superior to that of either India or China. The most disreputable is the Sicilian. This is found to be flat and tender, as also so white and opaque as to be of little utility. The Indian variety is especially noted for its excessive length. This exceeds, usually, all its compeers. The color is yellow, even when prepared and uncoated. No dyeing will permanently alter the shade. As regards

---

\* A glass float, containing phosphorus.

strength, it ranks below the Spanish and China gut. Good round and sound gut should stand a strain of from two and a half to five pounds, according to the thickness, without parting. Before joinings are made, the ends should be moistened between the lips, so as to admit of its bedding down, and to avoid splittings; otherwise, dry old gut will "spilch," and break at the knots when forming.

When gut is imported, it is coated with a thin, brittle, yellow skin, which is easily removed. This is its raw or unbleached state. We may here observe that often too much doctoring is practised in baking, boiling, bleaching, and unbarking the raw substance. A large class are prejudiced in favor of what they term a beautiful white tint. This taste, unfortunately, the fish do not share; consequently, are not so easily to be duped through its medium.

In clear water the gut used should be either stained a faint sky-blue, so as to offer no lighter or darker contrast to its back-ground, or be left a transparent tint, undistinguishable in the water. Some rivers are habitually clear, others slightly this or that shade. The view of the gut line should in each individual case tally. Our ancestors used sorrel, brown, and white, or even black hair; but when used under similar circumstances with gut prepared as above, the tender, hollow hair is found far behind the age. We have, however, dealt already fully with the relative virtues of gut and hair.

Bottom reels are made of almost every conceivable variety and substance. We are inclined to give preference to the Nottingham\* spring check. This check or

---

\* The Nottingham reel "is usually made of wood, and in two pieces, the barrel of the reel upon which the line is wound turning upon a spindle fixed in the center of the portion which forms the immovable part of the reel. This is contrived so that the barrel will run with the utmost freedom at the lightest touch." The above description is given by Francis Francis, Esq., Angling Editor of "The London Field."

“click” action is put on at will by a movable spring, something after the style of the old spring stop reels. In the varying methods of angling now followed, a tool that can be regulated to any degree of action required is far preferable to a set contrivance, admitting of no alteration at will. These winches\* are now made with steel centers.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

### PIKE FISHING.

SPINNING,† THE ROD AND LINE; ARTIFICIAL BAITS, HOW TO USE THEM; FISHING STORY; LIVE BAIT FISHING; FLY AND “FROG” FISHING.

The greedy, ferocious, and excessively gluttonous nature of this, “the fell tyrant of the liquid plain,” has been pointed out by angling authors both ancient and modern. We shall, therefore, confine ourselves to the most approved methods now in use for its capture. These may be enumerated thus, viz.: Spinning, Live Bait, and Dead Gorge Fishing or Trolling, and Fly Fishing. There is scarcely any limit to the expedients adopted for killing pike; frogs, mice, worms, etc., in fact, bait of every

---

\* “Winch” and “reel” are synonymous terms with English anglers. The former seems to be applied to metal reels only, and the latter to wooden ones, or more particularly to the one used by Nottingham fishermen, which, however, is occasionally made of metal.

† “Spinning,” as described in this chapter, is performed by casting the bait, natural or artificial, on the rod, from the banks of a stream. The English method of doing this is somewhat similar to that used by the striped-bass casters of this country, which is known as the Cuttyhunk style. The rod, however, is given more of a sweeping movement, and the bait, in the act of casting, is pendant five to eight feet from the rod-tip. The Thames or Trent method is to coil the line at the feet of

conceivable description meets with due appreciation when these fish are on the run; toads, it would appear, are the only creatures they reject, but a dab of yellow paint will make even these presentable. The spinning art, when skillfully practised is, beyond all dispute, the most successful system for extracting these fish; we say practised skillfully, not because skill is actually requisite to success, but merely to point out the difference between the ancient and rude hand trolling, and really scientific spinning, with rightly adapted tools and tackle.

Spinning with the natural bait claims the precedence; it is practised as follows: A small fish (dace, roach, etc.), of three or four ounces is taken and placed upon a flight of hooks (the method of arrangement varying according to the particular nature of the flight used); one of the most simple and best we give upon plate III., fig. 5. There are other flights, consisting chiefly of a number of small triangles, the use of which we cannot commend. Accidents are far too rife with substantial hooks to make it worth one's while to risk anything by the insufficiency of one's appointments. The complicated nature of most flights renders it extremely difficult for the novice to bait

---

the caster, or wind it around the left hand as described on a previous page of the text, or, "by gathering up the line in the palm of the hand by an up and down motion, something like that of a weaver with a shuttle." The Nottingham style of casting from the reel is identical with that in use by the float fishermen on the salt water bays and estuaries adjacent to the city of New York. A somewhat similar method, barring the use of the rod, may also be seen daily, in the white perch season, on the Delaware River above tide-water. The fishers anchor their boat at the head of a likely "swim" and cast their hand-lines, allowing the float to drift with the current, sometimes for an hundred yards or more, until the action of the float indicates the presence of a shoal of fish. The fishermen, then, by quietly drawing the anchor a foot or so from the bottom, allow the boat to drift down stream and then softly drop the "killick," when within easy fishing distance of the perch, which are gathered in great herds, as it were, to the number of thousands. We have been present when a score of 1300 perch was made by three lines in a morning's fishing.

them properly, so as to enable them to describe the ordinary revolutions. In this tackle, no difficulty of this nature is encountered. The lip-hook is inserted through the upper and lower lips of the bait, so as to close the mouth, the most slender hook of the triangle pierces the side, leaving the larger span of hooks unencumbered; lastly, the tail of the bait is made to form a slight curve by inserting the end hook, so as to cause the bait to swim in a wobbling sort of way. At certain times this motion proves very effective in alluring the quarry. The statements bearing upon this point, given in another chapter (trout spinning), apply with equal significance to pike spinning. Pike flights may, however, be used perfectly straight, as by the use of a small F. G.\* spinner and swivel combined, which can be placed a yard or so above the bait, perfect action is secured, the lure revolving well, and in a direct line, a great desideratum in bait spinning, especially in the case of the rapacious pike, as he is even more apt than other species to miss the whirling turn-tailed bait.

A diagram of this very useful metal appendage to the midwater fisher, is given on plate III., fig. 4.

The rod for pike is now made little more than one-half the former dimensions; the cumbersome tool of from fifteen to twenty feet is being discarded in favor of a more efficient implement of about nine or ten feet. The old swing movement for getting out the bait is quite surpassed by what may be termed the spring motion; the fisherman's right angle is reduced by this change, his general style and comfort vastly improved, and success rendered more sure. To the uninitiated, the idea of reducing the rod would imply a corresponding lessening of the power of the rodster; but this is exactly the reverse

---

\* For the "Fishing Gazette" spinner (see plate III.), an examination of which will explain its construction more lucidly than a diffuse description.

of the actual result, for instead of limiting this power over general surroundings, it largely augments it. In the first instance, his casting powers are greatly increased, he being able to fish a much larger area from a given standing point, the precise limits varying according to the amount of practical skill shown by the operator. The possible limit with the old long rods was forty yards, or thereabouts; but since the introduction of the short ones, the cast that fails to exceed sixty yards is considered nothing extraordinary. Secondly, the angler retains far greater command over the bait with a short rod; the large size of the upright rings, which are less in number, offer comparatively little resistance to the free passage of the line, thus causing the bait by leverage to carry out prodigious lengths of line, which would, under the traditional system, have been considered simply impossible. The style of using these modern pike rods is founded upon the fork stick principle of trolling; the weighted natural or heavy artificial is attached to a limp though strong plaited silk line, which is usually undressed, being simply waxed to take out "kinks" and "turns." This is mounted upon a large Nottingham reel, which is arranged to run freely.

When these appliances are procured, the result sometimes exceeds the most sanguine anticipations. The very largest fish are held more under control, and are much more easily landed when a short and sturdy rod is employed; whilst as regards wear, our readers need not be told that the more timber used, and the more lanky the implement is, the less is its durability.\*

With regard to the artificial baits for pike, much might be said. Their variety is endless, ranging from the clumsy-looking spoon to the gaudy glass bait. Speaking

---

\* Our author's ideas of trolling and casting rods approach nearer the American standard, than those of any other English writer on angling.

of spoon baits reminds us that there has of late been an improvement of importance in their construction, we refer to the "Colorado." At the hollow side of the dished metal is placed a barrel-shaped lead upon a wire, around which lead and wire revolves the spoon itself, it having a pair of flanges at its upper or narrow end. The conspicuous triangle fixed at the extremity is partially hid by a tag or tassel of vermilion wool, secured by flat silver tinsel. Its action when in the water is really admirable, and great things are reported as having been accomplished since its comparatively recent introduction. We never did believe in "spooning," but since the invention of the "Colorado"\* our sentiments have undergone somewhat of a change. For the capture of the very heaviest pike in river or lake this bait is particularly well adapted. Metal casts of fry mounted in various ways are now to be obtained. In many of these much ingenuity is displayed, as notably in the different makes of "Gregory" baits, some of which spin upon their own axis; these for rotary motion are perhaps unequalled, others being jointed and thus flexible, while others again are stationary, relying as per precedent upon the upper swivels for freedom in spinning. Many of the above are colored with a view to the effect when in action. Other baits are representations of some distinct species of fish, as gudgeon, dace, etc. These are for the most part constructed from gutta-percha, rubber, etc. They are often much esteemed when stationary; they may please the human eye, but fail to meet with due appreciation from the fish when in action. The general curved shape of the body acts very detrimentally in causing the line to describe a spiral or corkscrew flight, which is calculated to miss what fish may deign to essay an acquaintance. The "Phan-

---

\* The spinning baits named by the author are not in general use in America; the exceptions being the "Phantom" (the Imbrie improved), and the Devon or Angle.



tom" is another bait not well adapted for rough work, owing to its liability to sustain damage from the keen teeth of the pike.

The best "artificial" to rely upon, when "naturals" run short, we give as follows, viz., the "Gregory," "Clipper," "Wheeldon," "Windsor Bee," and "Excelsior." Most anglers have a marked partiality for heavy brass gimp, of thrice the necessary thickness. Gimp should be no thicker or stronger than is absolutely requisite, and should be of the best quality, having the finest raw silk centre. In common gimp, which is disposed of by the manufacturers by weight, the wire is much too thick, the proportion of silk being less accordingly. It is, however, made very fine and strong indeed, of very little more substance than stout lake gut. The best gimp is usually made bright, and excessively fine in wire. Before this is used it should be slightly stained with logwood and copperas, with just enough of the latter to darken the dye. This removes the glare, and effects a great improvement. Having advised as to the equipment of the pike spinners, we shall now proceed to lay down a few directions as to the most artistic and successful method of using them that commonly followed upon the Thames. The line should not be worked from the reel nor yet from the feet,\* as commonly practised, but from the left hand, around the fourth finger and thumb, off which it is wound rapidly crosswise. The motion thus conveyed to the bait works it well if rightly accomplished; some anglers simply haul in the line by instalments into the palm of the hand, but this is anything but sportsman-like. The bait is delivered to the spot desired in the following manner:—Line to about half the length of the rod is let out with the bait ready fixed at its extremity, the length of line required for the proposed cast being

---

\* From coils on the ground.

first wound round the distended thumb and finger in the manner above described; this done, the bait must be put in motion, a backward and forward leverage is given which should be rapidly increased, and now an effective springing jerk of the rod, just as the bait reaches the extreme backward point, sends it out quickly, taking off the line from the disengaged hand in its flight. The point of the rod must be held so as to admit of the bait traveling as near as possible in midwater. When the rodster experiences a tug at the extremity of his line he should strike instantly, but firmly; too heavy striking, it must be remembered, is highly dangerous; it imperils the safety of the tackle as well as the fish. A clumsy or too impetuous striker will frequently break away hooks and trace, or, failing that, the hold of the hooks from the mouth of the fish; it is therefore incumbent upon the tyro to exercise a little judicious care and calculation in driving home his steel into the bony jaws of the fish. Practice and experience are the mentors upon which the young aspirant must rely for proficiency in these matters. Rare sport is sometimes afforded by well-conditioned fish when lightly hooked and handled, and many instances are on record of fierce fights; not that the pike is noted for gameness, rather the reverse, but in exceptional cases when an extraordinary fish is struck great sport is often afforded.

The largest pike we ever killed was taken upon a stout salmon spinning trace, the flight being mounted upon the heaviest gimp. We were fishing in preserved water in a neighboring western county, and had hooked a pickerel a few odd pounds weight; when we were about to land the fish, the gleaming broadside of some larger relation of the family shone in the background, an instant, and then a heavy tug demonstrated the fact that our possession of the prey was disputed. Comprehending the situation, we let out line with the earnest hope that

this considerate exhibition of feeling would meet with due appreciation; nor were we disappointed, for after the lapse of a few minutes, which, under the circumstances it must be admitted, seemed rather long ones, the fun began. We were in sole possession of a light punt upon an extensive sheet of water, and thus, having plenty of sea room, we were rather confident as to the result. At the first gentle touch of the rod, the fish ran out fully half-a-hundred yards of line, at one impetuous rush, despite the heavy strain placed upon the rod. A heavier reserve was now put on the remaining portion of line through the medium of the rod, but here we discovered our command over him to be considerably less than we calculated, for such was the determination of the hooked fish to explore the other side of the lake, that the punt began to move in chase. To reserve the remainder of our line would tend to aggravate the nuisance, to let it run meant disaster. Whilst we hesitated we unconsciously stopped further supply of line, of which fact we were forcibly reminded by the rapid motion of the punt as it progressed across the water. Just as we had resolved to break away from the fish he suddenly doubled, making straight for the punt—we hauled in the loose line in coils at our feet as actively as was practicable under the circumstances—the next instant he dashed off with renewed vigor at right angles, and we again strained heavily upon every foot he stole, despite which our whole stock was all but spent before he again turned. For more than an hour was this operation of hauling in and paying out line repeated without ceasing, at the end of which time the final tragic end seemed as remote as ever. By this time several stable functionaries from the adjoining mansion arrived upon the scene, among whom a learned controversy ensued as to the probable weight and breed of a fish capable of towing a man and a boat with impunity. As the fish swerved along shore in their immediate prox-

imity all dispute suddenly dropped, and we observed, what had previously escaped our notice, namely, a large stable fork in the possession of a bandy-legged individual who had stepped forward, fork in hand, ready for action. Before we could interfere a wild thrust was made, which, however, fell short of the mark, as may very easily be imagined; nevertheless it well nigh ended the fight, the terrified fish making for less dangerous quarters at a rate that eclipsed all previous exploits, the pressure upon the line availing little beyond keeping the snout of the fish above the water's surface. After this final rush a reaction set in, the fish for the first time showing signs of fatigue, which speedily developed into complete exhaustion. To consummate the capture by gaffing and boarding was now a very easy matter, and successfully accomplished. The weight of the fish proved to be thirty-seven pounds and three-quarters. It was preserved and cased by the owner of the water, to whom it was presented, with the tail of the pickerel protruding from its extended jaw.

Live baiting is another favorite method of fishing for pike. The tackle requisite for this style of angling is shown on plate II., fig. 6. This is used with or without the barrel-lead. As the name implies, the bait is used alive, the small hook on the triangle is inserted carefully in the root of the back fin, the large span of hooks being loose at the side. The lure is then allowed to roam at will. It is necessary to employ none but the finest and best stained gimp. The reel line, too, should be both fine and strong, the lighter in weight the better. The line usually used in live-baiting for Thames trout is seldom much thicker than a piece of ordinary thread. The requisite substance and strength vary with the weight of the fish the line is intended to hold. The line referred to in roach-fishing would answer equally well for pike of sixteen pounds and under, as it would for Thames trout. The actual dead-weight sustaining powers range

exactly double, when the substance is an animated body in water ; thus, if a gut line will just raise three pounds from the dead level of the ground, it will hold a fish of six pounds in water, and this difference is still greater when a pliable rod is the sustaining medium. It is therefore the greatest folly to employ needlessly powerful tackle even for pike.

We, nevertheless, advise the use of tackle needful for the largest fish of the species you may be angling for, that are known to be present in the length fished. To omit so doing would be to remove all prospects of landing a good fish ; but exaggeration is rife in these matters, and the popular idea is, that the most powerful tackle is essential for successful pike-fishing, of whatever nature it may be. But to return, the movements of the roving bait must be carefully observed where practicable ; and if, owing to the state of the water, this is not possible, the rodster must follow the movements of the bait by the feel conveyed by the line, and care must be taken not to distress the bait, or it will soon be exhausted. When a fish takes the bait, a minute or two should be allowed him to gorge it. In some localities the custom is to use a single gimp hook, which is attached to the upper lip of the bait ; this, however, causes it to move in an unnatural way, with the tail uppermost, and cannot be said to equal the method previously described.

We now come to fly-fishing for pike. That these fish would take a natural fly is even less probable than in the case of salmon. A jack will come with evident gusto at a bird, just as he would at a rat, therefore it is essential that the artificial should be of very unusual proportions. Discarded salmon flies, of large size, render good account amongst pike ; a regular pike-fly, generally speaking, is a clumsy combination of peacock eye or sword feathers, cock pheasant's hackles, gaudy Berlin wool or worsted, gilt or silver tinsel, and glass beads ; the peacock doing

service for wings, pheasant for legs, beads for eyes, and the remainder forming the body.\*

The largest fish seem most partial to the fly; whether it is that they are hunger-bitten, or whether they rise in the spirit of wantonness, we cannot pretend to say. From the position of the eyes, situated as they are upon the top of the head, he naturally sees more directly above than around. In the northern lakes, pike are very often taken with the fly wherever they abound, whenever they are in the humour for rising, for like all other species, they have their off and on terms, even when in season.

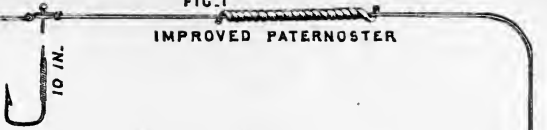
In a work devoted solely to the more scientific methods of taking fish, it may appear out of place to refer to what are sometimes deemed repulsive styles or systems. We would, however, crave the forbearance of those of our readers whose sentiments may savor of these, for a brief space, as we cannot omit a few remarks upon frog-fishing for pike, which is held in such high repute by veteran pike-fishers. The style most in vogue is to work the frog as a live bait; the hook, which should be of special length, strength, and size, should be passed through the bottom lip, and under the stomach, the bend being then secured to the thigh of one of the hind legs by a scrap of silk of the right shade. This is conveyed through an opening in the foliage on the banks of the water, a few odd feet only of the line being out. When through, a gentle swing motion is described by the line and the lure, a sudden lurch or spring being given when at some distance, to reach the spot desired; the line, as before stated,

---

\* Mr. W. Thomson, a practical angler, residing in Barric, Ont., in a communication to "The American Angler," states, that upon observing a flock of young ducks disappear, one by one, when feeding along the edges of the weeds, and suspicious that a pike was the cause, he procured a bunch of greenish yellow Berlin wool and fashioned it into the rude shape of a duckling. With this clumsy lure, he soon landed a well-conditioned pike of nearly fourteen pounds.

FIG. 1

IMPROVED PATERNOSTER



TACKLE CASE

FIG. 2

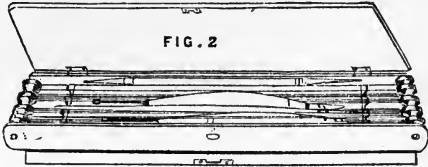


FIG. 3 IMPROVED LEDGER

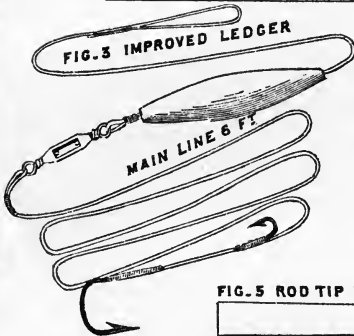


FIG. 4

SOLID ROD RING IMPROVED



FIG. 5 ROD TIP IMPROVED

10 IN.

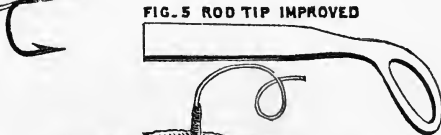


FIG. 6

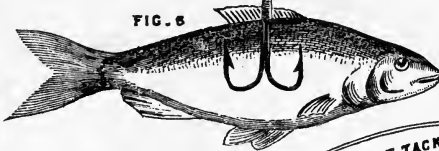
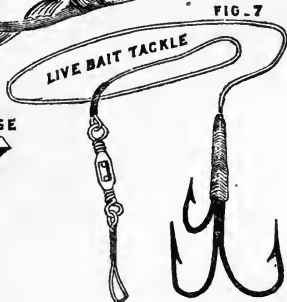


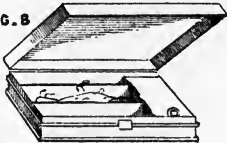
FIG. 7

LIVE BAIT TACKLE



THE SAFETY BAIT CASE

FIG. 8



MAIN LINE 3 YARDS





being wound round the distended thumb and finger. Another plan is to dape and sink alternately with this bait, which is also very deadly. Artificial frogs are now to be had that answer the purpose almost equally with the not always to be procured living ones. The legs upon these are so constructed as to admit of life-like action when in the water.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

### SPINNING FOR TROUT.

THE THAMES AND TRENT STYLE; SPINNING IN DISCOLORED AND CLEAR WATER; MINNOW FLIGHTS, HOW TO USE THEM; ARTIFICIAL BAITS; THE ROD, LINE, REEL; FLIGHT CANS.

If it is important to know the haunts of the trout when fly-fishing, it is doubly so when trolling or spinning, as then no circling eddy betrays the habitual feeding grounds. In small streams and rapid brooks, however, this is not of nearly so great importance. Large fish generally locate in some secluded curl, not far from a deep hole, whither they return upon being disturbed or "knocked off the feed." The best and most likely places upon the whole river's length are sure to be tenanted by the largest fish, the second best fish are in the immediate vicinity, and take up the position of the extracted heavier one. When large trout are killed upon the open stream, it is a sign of their being out on the "forage," and great execution ought then to be effected. There are quite as many grades of minnow-spinners as there are of fly-fishers, ranging from the old method of trawling or trolling with heavy primitive tackle in discolored water, to the scientific Thames and Trent style, which is to stand

at a weir or waterfall, and dexterously work the bait in the surging boil of water, near and far away, a fifty yards cast being deemed nothing at all wonderful ; but distance is not of so much importance as is a thorough command of the line, which should be gathered by the disengaged left hand, so that no slack hangs about anywhere. To acquire the art of casting should be the first care of the rodster, whether he aspires to bait or fly. When able to pitch the bait fifteen or twenty yards, and from wrist motion to gently insert into water in a way that will not have the effect of disturbing the feeding fish, he may congratulate himself on having acquired the leading qualification requisite to become an adept in the spinning art.

The water that happens to be nearest the rodster should be fished first, afterwards the centre and opposite sides, and lastly, the obscure and more difficult spots to reach. There the best fish are to be taken. The parts usually to be preferred are the heads and tails of streams ; the few yards of turbulent water at the head of the stream being generally the most productive.

The speed at which the bait is drawn should be graduated in accordance with the state and color of the water. For instance, in the event of the water being thick and turbid, a much slower motion should be given to the bait, just sufficient to spin it, in fact. The bait, whether natural or artificial, should work freely at the slightest pull in slow running water ; upon the other hand, in the clearest possible water, the lure should be brought round at a moderately steady sweep, not with a jerking motion. A sudden stoppage in clear water has the effect rather of alarming than appeasing the natural suspicions of the acute and well-schooled heavy fish ; but, in highly discolored water, the " halting " or jerking motion is absolutely necessary to enable the fish both to see and seize the bait. Behind a projecting rock or bank, where the water is comparatively quiet, no matter whether shallow

or deep, the fish congregate, as the thick, swollen streams cannot be stemmed, and are therefore avoided. Here the fish fall an easy prey to the mid-water or minnow-fisher, as what is known as minnow daping or dabbling (*i.e.*, giving the bait the slow, whirling motion of a sickly fish) often produces exceptionally heavy takes, even when the water is bank full, and, figuratively speaking, as thick as a "pea soup." But this method of extracting fish at an undue advantage we detest, as being unsportsmanlike in the extreme. We have frequently observed individuals (we do not say fishermen) upon hooking a fish in such circumstances, with the strongest possible tackle, literally turn tail upon the water by shouldering the rod and walking away until the hooked fish "flaps" high and dry on the bank. It is some consolation, however, that these gentlemen (?) occasionally catch a "tartar" in the shape of a hidden stump, root, or pile, in which case the diversion is pleasantly varied by a "flap" or snap of the tackle, and total loss of bait.

We do not encourage minnow fishing in temporarily discolored water. It is too sure a way for real sport. Absolute certainty in the pursuit of game destroys the keenness, and takes off the edge, so to speak, of one's feeling of enjoyment when success is in no way dependent upon personal skill. With the finest tackle, in clear water and weather, there is more real satisfaction to be derived from the successful capture of a fine, well-fed fish than in forty such taken by unfair means. The minnow-spinner, in clear and rapid streams, should always, where practicable, cast up-stream, bringing the bait across and down by a judicious working of the rod from the wrist. As a rule, drawing against stream should be avoided. It is unnatural for a deformed or sickly fish to attempt any feat of the kind; and not only this, when spinning the natural minnow the force of the current causes the bait to assume a very unnatural attitude in the water, especially when

the movable lip hook is used; therefore, up-hill spinning should be avoided. The angler should ever remember that the secret of success lies mainly in the motion of the spinning bait. The theory of bait spinning is founded upon the well-known propensities of the heavy fish for weakly fry, which accounts for the otherwise unaccountable fact of the well spun bait being seized from the very midst of a shoal of living minnows. The peculiar forms of many substitutes for natural minnows act detrimentally as regards hooking fish. Take the old turn-tailed family of artificials for example. Watch the peculiar motions of a specimen as you slowly bring it through the clear water. You observe that it describes a kind of corkscrew motion. This, especially when accomplished rapidly, will entice fish far oftener than it will hook them; long practice dictates that nine "runs" make one capture, through the instrumentality of these curved or turn-tailed "artificials." What is needed is a perfectly straight bait, when an artificial is employed, no matter whether the spinning propellers or Archimedean flies be at the head or the tail. So far as this is concerned it will then take a direct "pigeon" flight through the water, moving an equal number of fish, whilst being more effective in hooking them. In natural minnow-spinning this is not of so much importance, the fish that "goes" for the natural bait without getting hooked, will more frequently come again, not meeting with so hard a substance. The minnow flight we have found preferable to those generally in use, we give on plate III., fig. 1. The minnow is placed upon the tackle in the following manner: First, the lead is inserted in the mouth of the fish, the lips being closed by the movable lip hook. This done the bait is pierced through from the one side to the other with the large hook, which should be so placed as to keep the lead well up in the minnow's back. Lastly, one of the pair of tail hooks should be made to slightly curl the tail

of the minnow. When this arrangement of hooks is correctly inserted the bait is more secure, and will be found to last longer than when mounted in the older and general style.

The most objectionable "flights" are those consisting of a number of small hooks, whether triangular or otherwise; the ease with which they are broken renders them an abomination when used amongst weighty fish. Another arrangement, which is also very good, whilst being very simple to fit up for use, is the old leaded wire tackle, which, in lieu of the two side flanges, is fitted with a tiny "Fishing Gazette" spinner, plate III., fig. 3. The bait is mounted merely by thrusting the weighted wire down the mouth, the position being rendered secure by means of the side hooks, which are to be partly hidden in the minnow. For strong currents this tackle is well adapted, its action in the water being perfectly straight and natural; for more open streams the first referred to is recommended, as being all that can be reasonably desired. In most waters the natural minnow is preferable, when procurable. In some streams the skillfully used artificial will, however, not only turn over as many fish, but will kill even more than the natural, the hooks upon it having greater play, while being hid in a measure by better spinning action. Amongst the many "artificials" now in use, we may mention a few of those that are most distinguished for deadly qualities. The "Devon" or "Totnes" (improved pattern), the "Derby Trout Killer," the "Universal Killer," and "Foster's Excelsior." The first named is an old reliable bait, originally introduced by a clever Devonshire fisherman. Improvements have lately been made in its construction, which renders it perhaps one of the most effective baits for "all round" fishing that has hitherto appeared. The bait is heavier metalled, German silver being substituted for the plated brass formerly used. The side flanges are larger and heavier, which

materially increases the spinning powers, and altogether the changes effected have considerably added to its value, and are likely to enhance still more its already extensive reputation. The "Derby Trout Killer" was introduced in Derbyshire about the same period as the "Totnes" was in Devon. This bait is more especially adapted for fine waters. It is a capital bait for scientific fishing, as, for instance, in the middle of a hot day in July or August, when the flies, to avoid the sun's rays secrete themselves in the shades of the neighboring foliage, and the fish refuse to rise in consequence; then does the "Trout Killer" distinguish himself in circumstances when spinning would appear the most unlikely style or system of fishing. So effective is this bait in some localities that it is there known as the "Derby kill-devil." The hooks and bait are delicately made, the better to adapt them for this method of fishing. The finest trace and swivel are essential to success in these circumstances.

The "Universal Killer" and the "Excelsior" are both metal baits (the latter solid), the former being an exceedingly "natty" little thing, well suited for rough and turbulent brooklets, the tributaries of our main trouting streams. The spinning power is placed at the tail of this bait. This is considered an especial advantage by some anglers, as trout frequently "come" at the head of the minnow.

The special advantages in the "Excelsior" are the extra weight—it being almost double that of any bait of the same size and dimensions—which enables the tyro to spin and cast with ease and success, with but little practice. Its durability adapts it for general use amongst pike, perch, chub, trout, or salmon. The hooks are fixed in the bait without gut, being eyed triangles of heavy metal; the nuisance of hooks breaking away through faulty gut is thus obviated.

Upon the choice of colors much depends, as trout are

partial to a change in this respect. Take as an illustration—upon a recent occasion having been requested to test the killing qualities of a new artificial, we had repaired to a famous brooklet, and had succeeded in creeling some four brace of good fish from a confined length of a hundred and fifty yards, which was the extent of our permit. All further dealings were ignored after this being accomplished, though we had moved many more fish than we had taken. Something like half an hour elapsed without our turning over a single fin. Upon this we put another bait of a totally different shade, when in action, upon the line, and commenced, and in the course of the next twenty minutes five more fish were landed, when the fish again turned stupid; but upon a bright metal bait, without coloring matter at all, being presented to them, two more brace were taken. Beyond doubt the fish's eye and palate are tickled by a change occasionally.

We invariably advocate the use of the very finest possible tackle for mid-water fishing in low and clear water. The popular belief would appear to be strongly in favor of the reverse; for bait spinning under all circumstances, scarcely anything can be more erroneous. The accomplished scientific troller will extract fish where it is usually deemed almost an impossibility. And when an incredulous bungler fails to effect a single capture, and returns troutless and dispirited from the well-stocked stream, fair sport will often accompany the rodster who is really a master of the trolling art.

THE ROD, to be suitable for spinning, should be bamboo or cane, light and stiff, and from twelve to fourteen feet in length for open water; but for small streams eleven or twelve feet is recommended as being quite long enough. The sixteen and eighteen feet double-handed rods, usually advocated, are now deemed much too cumbrous, and are rapidly being discarded. The greater utility of a single-handed light rod has long been obvious to a large class of

anglers, and its admirers are yearly extending. East India cane is the best adapted for rods where stiffness and lightness are essential, it being extremely strong, though reasonably pliable. The rod we use ourselves for this style of angling is but ten feet in length, the rings, however, are large and stationary, and we find no difficulty in casting to eighty or ninety feet with a tool of this description. The rings upon spinning rods should all be upright and of fair size, so as to admit of a free and unencumbered passage for the line when carried out by the weight of the bait in casting. Where the fish do not run large, an ordinary fly-rod answers admirably for spinning purposes, when a short stiff top-piece is substituted for the slender fly-top joint, the only drawback being the minute loose rings, which hinder the free passage of the line.

THE LINE should be plaited silk, waterproof, of about one-half the usual thickness of a dressed fly-line; forty or fifty yards are required for any water more open than small brooklets, etc. Nothing is so trying to a line as bait spinning; and if it is desirable to keep the line sound for a long period, it should never be worked undressed and unprotected, or a very short time—when constantly used—will serve to rot and fray it, so as to render it unfit for use. Twist or cable-laid lines are also of little utility, as after a severe trial the reel frequently resembles a ball of loose hemp or tow, the turn or twist having in part been taken out by the spinning action of the bait. The new acmé wire lines are now being used for all-round fishing, but they are best adapted for the fly.

THE REEL, as in pike fishing, should be of the improved Nottingham type. Some of these are made of metal, some of wood; the best of the latter are metal-bound, these are greatly to be preferred to the original all-wood patterns, no inconvenience being experienced from the wood swelling. The free action of these Not-



tingham reels is their great recommendation—practice will enable the angler to work efficiently. A thorough command of both rod, reel, and line is necessary to comfort in fishing. In scientific spinning a slight touch with the fourth finger of the hand holding the rod is sufficient to regulate the supply of line and the progress of the bait. These reels are now made with a check, which is made to act at the will of the rodster by the action of a small movable spring. Some winches are made of ebonite for spinning purposes; these are scarcely, we think, so desirable, as they are apt to break by a fall.

Artificial baits may be safely and conveniently carried in a small partitioned tin case, as they are liable to be very troublesome if carelessly placed in the over-crowded fly book, as when brushing through a stile, or surmounting a gate or other obstacles, the fisher may perhaps have a personal and undeniably practical experience of the efficiency of his own steel, which will have anything but a soothing effect upon the feelings. August is the best month in the whole season for trout spinning in the smaller rivers and rapid brooks, and the novice will then do well to stay after sunset, and fish until twilight.

## CHAPTER VIII.

## WORM FISHING FOR TROUT.

ANTIQUITY OF WORM FISHING; BUSH FISHING; TACKLE REQUISITE; "TRAWLING" FOR TROUT; SCIENTIFIC WORM FISHING.

The term Worm fishing, to many minds, conveys rather an obnoxious impression, anglers being as a class rather apt to ignore what has for ages been considered the most primitive bait for the simplest and most ancient method of fishing. As a lure for trout, until a recent period, the worm was but little used. We shall endeavour to show that this lure may be artistically and scientifically worked in clear and rapid trout streams, wherever situate.

Worm fishing in discolored water, it is well known, is practicable under circumstances when other experiments usually fail. Here the simplicity of the system pursued is exemplary of the art as practised by our forefathers; a cork float, leaded line, large hook, and stout gut, constituted the customary rig-out. In swollen streams fish congregate at the circulating side eddies, whether in or out of the usual water-course. Here the fisherman inserts the bait, and as an undue advantage is extended to the rodster by the thickened state of the water, the largest and best fish by no means unfrequently meet with an untimely end. To this unsportsmanlike method we venture to assert that no true fisherman will devote himself. Let there be clear water, clear weather, and clear scope for observation, and man may with a clear conscience pit his superior intelligence against the animal instincts of the brute creation.

Bush fishing,\* in some localities more correctly termed bush fighting, is another type of worming for trout. This, as the appellation implies, is the plan adopted upon well-wooded streams or brooks, which are practically inaccessible to the fly-fisher. Here the angler adroitly pitches his lure in every likely and unlikely looking nook, behind stones, by the roots of overhanging bushes, under shelving banks, etc. For the especial behoof of the novice we would observe that great caution should be exercised against uselessly scaring the fish from their customary locations. Indiscretion in this respect will spoil all chances of sport; therefore every interposing object, as bushes, etc., should be utilized, and the rodster should invariably fish up stream, as by that means not only will his bait act as herald in advance, but he has the additional advantage of being able to take note carefully of the particular position tenanted by the fish, and to regulate his cast accordingly. For bush fishing a short stiff rod is necessary, or it will be found next to impossible to keep the fish out of mischief when hooked. It is essentially necessary that the capture should be consummated as early as is consistent with the strength of the tackle. Of course there is no necessity for reviving early customs by attempting to extract one's fish in the earnest style of early youth, viz., at a strictly perpendicular angle. On the contrary, a judicious respite may be granted when circumstances permit.

The angler must never lose sight of the fact that in clear water his bait is very much more distinct on its merits, than when that element is discolored. It behooves him, therefore, not to disturb its natural progress, which is varied by the ever moving waters. Thus if the lure be

---

\* This paragraph will at once recall to the reader the proverbial country bumpkin, who, with his clumsy tackle and uncanny ways, always scores more fish on a trout stream than the scientific angler with his perfected outfit. The boy knows the holes and bushwhacks the fish.

gently dropped in a tiny eddy, its circulating motions are not to be hampered and foiled by the line creating a ripple and disturbance in the immediate proximity of the fish upon the look-out for food. It is seldom advisable to cast more than once in the same place; when neatly and carefully done, the bait will be readily seized if at all.

The tackle requisite for worm fishing in clear water, differs considerably from that used in what is discolored, no float being used, and except in rapid torrents, "sinkers" of any description are not necessary. About a yard-and-a-half of moderately thick gut is generally employed, at the extremity of which is placed one or more Kendal or Carlisle hooks, (size, six in single, seven or eight if double or treble). These should be attached to the gut with cerise or rose-colored silk, so as to match the bait in point of color. The hooks should be white, to prevent them from shining plainly through the bait, which latter should be small, lively, and of good color, no matter whether it be a brandling or cockspur, or even a small lob-worm, so long as it is lively and vigorous, instead of being limp, pale, and apparently lifeless. An excellent way of making really durable bottom tackle is to whip a minute scrap of roach, or any other fine line, upon the bare shank of the end hook, so as to form a small and well-nigh invisible loop, which will be found of great utility in general bottom fishing. The very finest gut may be attached by means of a slip knot, without even a chance of its "knocking off" at the head, as is the usual result of a small amount of heavy wear. When baiting, the worm should be carefully threaded up the gut, a small portion of each extremity of the bait being left free, to have as natural an effect as possible. Whenever a small or a solitary hook is employed, the rodster will allow a moment's breathing time ere he gently strikes. By this means it is more than probable that he will suc-

ceed in obtaining a safe anchorage amongst the side muscles of the fish's mouth ; but a trio of hooks, the Stewart tackle, for instance, requires no such hesitation. We have frequently known young anglers miss every fish they have succeeded in moving during an extremely favorable period, in which they might have effected much, had they displayed a moderate amount of discretion and aptness.

Another description of worm fishing in rapid waters, is to run out a long thin line, resembling the usual blow-line, in substance and weight, at the end of which a couple of yards of fine gut is attached, having a worm tackle fixed at its extremity. A stand is then made by some suitable swim, and the bait is allowed to travel with the stream. The line should be kept sufficiently straight to admit of a fish being instantly struck, as the length of line usually out allows amply (sometimes too long) for the proper seizure of the bait. This is a fairly good method upon tolerably open water. The chief feature, indeed we may say the secret of success in worm fishing, in clear water, is keeping, as much as is possible, out of sight. When the attention of fish is attracted by surface food they are scarcely so keen as to the movements upon the banks and sides of their element; but when not pre-occupied in this way, their organs of sight have ample scope and leisure for their full exercise.

And now we come to the more scientific style of using the worm. This is practised more particularly in the spring and early summer months. The bait is attached to the end of a treble extra-fine fly lash, by means of a worm tackle of three-hook power, when it is thrown as a fly, and worked upon the "cast and draw" system of fly fishing, with this difference, the bait is allowed to sink a few inches after each delivery upon the water. By this means, fish of the heaviest calibre are often taken. The produce of a single rod, when wielded by an adept, will

often exceed the joint takes of several orthodox fly fishers, more especially if the said rod be assiduously worked in early morn, during the first few hours of daylight, just as the fish commence to move playfully, as though demonstrating pleasure at the advent of yet another day. Whenever the attention of the fish is absorbed by surface food, it is not advisable to fish with the worm after any method, modern or ancient; but when flies are scarce, and the fish are eagerly upon the look out for what the stream may produce in the shape of mid-water food, or before the day's first instalments of winged insects put in an appearance, the worm will do great execution. This bait is inseparably connected with angling by all non-practitioners of the art, but it has been as much ignored in these fast-going times as it was adored by our ancestors. It will admit of the fly fisher for trout pursuing his sport in the teeth of circumstances adverse to the more legitimate modes of angling.

The ordinary fly-rod and line are employed, we had forgotten to observe, in conjunction with the fly cast. The most favorable spots to fish are in the surging waters of rivers and tiny cascades. A mountain trout stream, in which are combined a continuous and natural succession of turbulent rapids and pellucid pools in miniature, affords the very acme of perfection for the practice of this particular method of angling. Owing to the smallness of the (Kendal) hooks used (No. 10 being the size necessary), a small split shot should be attached half-a-yard or so from the bait, to give proper momentum in the boil of broken waters. The lure should be drawn briskly through even here, the strike of a fish being detected instanter in these circumstances by the feel, as in the various other styles of trouting in clear waters with the worm. As the use of living bait is not infrequently objected to on the ground of cruelty, we may state that even worms have of late been added to the immense cate-

gory of effectual "artificial," the identical rendering referred to having been found to answer in the last method of "worming" described. The artificial here alluded to is constructed in part from India rubber.

---

## CHAPTER IX.

### GRUB FISHING FOR GRAYLING.\*

GRUB BAITS FOR GRAYLING; METHODS OF USING; ANGLING REMINISCENCE; CAMPING OUT; MAGGOT FISHING.

This method of grayling fishing has now become so general, that the omission of a reference to it would render incomplete a work dealing with this fish. The baits now commonly used consist of the green (garden) caterpillar, and its artificial, which for some unaccountable reason is designated the grasshopper; gentles, wasp grubs, caddis-bait, and the larvæ of all the large water-flies found in their sheaths in the beds of streams; as also fresh-water shrimps, and other aquatic creatures. Of the larger of these grub-like forms, there are admirable artificial renderings to be had; which, when used as in the case of the green caterpillar, or grasshopper above alluded to, with a couple of gentles upon the somewhat large hook, answer wondrously well, and are often preferred to smaller naturals, owing to the sinking medium being laid in the centre, instead of having it in the shape of shot, sheet-lead, or wire, outside and in view. The

---

\* The habitat of the American grayling is so limited, that but few of our anglers have an opportunity to fish for them. The chapter is given, more as an illustration of English methods than for its practical value to our native rodsters.

system in vogue of using these large artificial lures is to attach them, tipped with gentles or wasp grubs, to the thicker half of a three yards fly-cast, and throw out upon either deep or shallow scours, frequented by the grayling, according to the time of year. The bait must be raised and dropped rapidly and continually, after being duly delivered in the required places, which should be the known haunts of these fish. The line should not be raised more than some four or five inches from the bottom, as the grayling, like barbel, are given to grope for food of the description reproduced in the copy. In some parts a small quill float is used, being attached with a wire loop at each extremity, in lieu of the ordinary runner. By this arrangement a certain amount of freedom is allowed to the line, which admits of its sliding at various depths from the surface, whilst the bait has a roving commission. For our own part, we have always managed to use the bait comfortably without the aid of one of these articles. The use of a float in clear water, whilst fishing for so keen-eyed a fish as the grayling, is anything but artistic or sportsmanlike. When fish are repeatedly missed, it is advisable to secure a small brown twig to the line by wire, in the same way as the sliding float is arranged, as this will not, especially upon densely wood-lined streams, act detrimentally as regards sport.

The originator of the artificial grub system of grayling-fishing (Hewett Wheatley) we are aware, counselled the use of a float, but since the appearance of his "Rod and Line," the fish have become so much more suspicious and wary, that not even a senior angler can, with impunity, transgress accepted rules without paying the penalty in net results. When the combination of artificial and natural lures is artistically worked by an adept, the slaughter amongst the heavy fish, which seldom or never rise, is immense. Although grayling are very partial to small baits, having a small mouth, they absorb a bunch



of hooked threaded gentles, etc., with as much avidity as an eel will worsted threaded worms. The best time for grub-fishing for grayling is from September to February, and the most severe weather is often the best for sport.

One of the brightest angling remembrances our memory retains, was an excursion after the grayling-time of year, in December—Christmas-eve, in fact—water and locality, the Derbyshire Wye, near Ambergate. Our party consisted of three rods; the morning was frosty, dry, and clear, the air deliciously pure and exhilarating, and the usually yielding turf was sufficiently hard to considerably increase our powers of locomotion. In the midst of the whitened landscape, the river flowed as tranquilly as on a long summer's day. We had arrived, fitted out for grub and hopper fishing; and with a favorable prospect of sport we set to work. The fish proved in excellent condition, and in feeding humor, and our humor was, therefore, speedily excellent, notwithstanding several losses of unusually heavy or subtle quarry. The "permit" being well-nigh boundless, we wandered far away from our starting point, and by the middle of the afternoon had left our quarters and luncheon miles behind, and when we assembled for a smoke and a chat, each creel was found to be quite respectably weighted. The fish, as is rarely the case when the water is below a certain temperature, had continued to feed throughout the fore and afternoon, and as there had as yet been no indication of their "knocking" off, we resumed our diversion, and before long had filled our panniers.

As the winter's sun had long sunk to rest, we began to think of retracing our steps; but before having described a third of the distance that lay before us, one of the party, who was, by-the-way, a bit of an invalid, suddenly discovered himself to be remarkably hungry. The third rodster, being an American tourist, took upon himself

the commissariat office. No human habitation appeared within reasonable distance, and how our weakly friend's languishing could be immediately satiated seemed a mystery. We were not long, however, to be left to speculate as to the nature of the expedient to be adopted. Upon the clear, hard turf, under the spreading, though now stark branches of an ancient oak, the wood severed by the violence of the late storms was arranged and ignited by pipe-lights; some of the choice medium-sized fish were split and cleaned in the silvery stream, so shortly before their home, spitted upon a two-pronged sapling, and, in the glowing embers, were quickly done to a turn. The relish with which they were eaten was significant; the beautiful aroma imparted to the delicate fare by the oaken embers, was simply delicious. Like the majority of anglers we seldom care for our takes, after having had the pleasure of extracting them; but we venture to assert that the most fastidious palate would, in similar circumstances, have found their quarry, so primitively yet so skilfully prepared, irresistible. Were we to state the precise quantity of fish so cooked and disposed of by the aid of pocket-knives upon that ever memorable Christmas-eve, we should scarce look for full credit for the statement. Let it suffice, that the intervening miles rapidly disappeared under our re-invigorated footsteps, through the picturesque moonlit Wye Valley, enlivened by the beautiful stream, and we arrived early at our comfortable quarters, and in a state of mind and body, which made the pillow an elysium of repose.

Maggot and wasp grubs are often used by bottom fishers for grayling, in a style somewhat similar to that adopted in worm-fishing for coarse fish; a quill float and very fine hook and tackle being, of course, substituted. Skillful roach-fishers are proficient at grayling-fishing with these appliances, though the fish are more frequently lost than when roach is the quarry. Ground

baiting prevails as a system, but is most certainly unnecessary, as, by an observant angler, the periodical haunts of these gregarious fish are easily discovered. A few hand sprinklings of gentles, etc., cast around the baited hook answers as efficiently as whole quarts of the same indiscreetly planted; indeed, these fish speedily become satiated, and the use of ground-bait is often highly detrimental to subsequent sport.

---

## CHAPTER X.

### PISCATORIAL ENTOMOLOGY.\*

To be a moderately successful wielder of the rod may be looked upon as a very desirable accomplishment, nay, more, a laudable ambition; but beyond mere skill in casting a fly, and killing and landing a fish, a little rudimentary knowledge of the truly scientific, and, consequently, most attractive part of the art, is essential, in order to attain proficiency.

There are hundreds of tolerably good anglers who are such indifferent entomologists as to be unable to discern

---

\* The entomology of American fly-fishing is yet to be written. Miss McBride, some years ago, contributed a few pleasing and instructive articles to a weekly journal on this subject, and so far as my knowledge extends, her attempt was the last one made by an American writer; but, as more than two hundred years elapsed from the time of Walton to the date of Roland's work on English piscatorial entomology, our angling authors may be pardoned, if a decade or two elapses in the production of an American text book on this fascinating subject. The notes of the author are extremely interesting and instructive, and, although much of the text is inapplicable to the needs of our native anglers, I give the entire chapter on account of the practical presentation of the subject matter.

the difference between one species of common insect and well-known fly and another; and, lacking this rudimentary knowledge of the insect world, are apt to credit the fish with no greater powers of discernment than themselves—a great injustice to the natural instincts of the denizens of the streams. Such delusions are propounded by fourth-rate followers of every branch of the arts and sciences. That educated English trout can and do distinguish the most trivial difference in both attitude, size, and color, is a truism well-known and readily acknowledged by all fishermen of experience.\* The complicated and ever-extending fly list of the leading authorities on fly-fishing tends rather to confuse and bewilder than to enlighten the youthful aspirant, leading him frequently to ignore the whole as unnecessary and superfluous.

In giving the following hints on entomology as applicable to fly-fishing, our aim is to sketch briefly and intelligibly the ordinary “standards,” which are sufficiently numerous, generally speaking, to attract the attention of the fish when they put in an appearance. The numerical strength of the flies out at one time may be said invariably to determine the ardor with which the fish feed. Thus, when the May-fly or March Brown are but scantily “on,” the Iron Blue Dun or Black Gnat, if prevalent, will kill infinitely better, simply because the whole attention of the fish for the time being is centered upon them, owing to their greater abundance.

The flies that form food for fish may be divided into two classes, viz., the Up-winged (*Ephemeridæ*) and Flat-winged (*Phryganeidæ*, *Muscidæ*, etc.) Of the latter there are many varieties, part being of the water, as are the whole of the first order, the *Ephemeridæ* family. These water flies are of the greatest use to the angler, as they

---

\* This is an open question as to American trout.

rise to the surface only to fulfill their natural functions, living but a few days, and ever delighting to sport on or near their native element. Not so the land flies. They do not habitually frequent the water, being seldom seen upon it, excepting when swept there by the force of the wind; hence it follows that they are rarely sufficiently numerous except upon cold and windy days, or after a boisterous storm.

In taking, first, the most important order of naturals (the *Ephemeridæ* family), we deal with what has hitherto been made a most intricate and formidable list of insects, modern naturalists dividing and sub-dividing into sections and sub-sections until the poet Pope's "thousands of winged insects" threaten to descend from the ideal into stern reality. Personal observations, extending over a period of fifty years, lead us to affirm the greater part of this extensive classification to be perfectly needless. There are, in fact, but four different species of Up-winged insects, these forming the *Ephemeridæ* family. The prevailing temperature of the atmosphere and the water at the time of the larva and pupa arriving at the stage of maturity, is largely instrumental in influencing the color, the body of the insect particularly being susceptible to change from these effects.

The four species here referred to are the ordinary Olive and Iron Blue Duns, the Large Browns, and the May-fly or Green Drake.\*

The Olive Dun makes its first appearance in February, when it is known as the Blue Dun, or February Flapper. It then presents a dead-lead color, the inclement weather then seasonable causing the fly to assume so sombre a hue. A few weeks later, if the weather be more genial, it is a shade lighter upon the body, when it is styled the

---

\*These flies are also made in the United States, and used on some of our native waters.

Cock-winged Dun. By the beginning of April it is of a general olive color, with yellow-ribbed body, upon which rests a bloom, like that of a ripe muscat grape, but upon dull days a rust-like fungus is substituted for this, which gives a ruddy appearance to the whole body at first sight. It is then known as the Yellow Dun of April, light and dark. In April, in the cold water near the springs or sources of streams, more especially in limestone districts, the fly appears of a light blue tint. This is designated the Pale Blue Dun. A few weeks later again, and the Blue Dun of February appears as the Yellow Dun of May, and in ungenial weather, as the Hare's Ear Dun. This, like most of these multifarious appellations, takes its name from a part of the material used in the construction of the artificial, the former being a light and delicate olive, the latter several shades darker.

The "Yellow Dun of May" continues plentiful through June on hot days, the action of the sun rendering it lighter on the body. In July it is designated the Pale Evening White, it being as white as a new shilling. The nymphæ locating in shallow open water, where the sun's rays penetrate during the hot months, the fly appears excessively light and delicate. In June, unseasonable weather causes the body of the dun to assume a dirty yellow tinge, and it is then known as the Common Yellow Dun. It acquires a more pronounced yellow a little later, when the fly is termed the Golden Dun, being more partial to fine weather. There are still two other shades before the gradual tints of this interesting fly terminate, and a comprehensive glance may be given of them in the order of rotation as the season progresses.

The nympha of the Pale Evening Dun rises from deep still water, the color very much resembling the common yellow shade of June. This, in common with all water flies, gradually assumes a lighter shade, even when exposed to the sun's rays for only an hour. Dull or inclem-

ent weather in July produces the July Dun, in which the old and more general olive shade is again visible, commingling with pale yellow. And now, with the declining months, the fish and fishermen are treated to a repetition of the various shades of the spring, though graduating in the contrary direction, *i. e.*, growing darker as the months pass, instead of lighter. Thus, in August we have the exact shades of May, and in September those of April—the state of the weather and the water being similar to that in the corresponding earlier months of the year—until we again arrive at the Dull Blue Dun of February in November.

The whole of the foregoing are the natural progeny of the common red spinner. All the Duns, therefore, that live to maturity become spinners; they are, in consequence, very numerous. In the warmer months this fly becomes lighter in shade, assuming a golden tint on the body, when it is designated the Golden, instead of the Red Spinner.\* The limited period usually devoted to the study of the native water flies, which are designed for the sustenance of non-migratory fish, both upon the surface and in the bed of the rivers, has led to erroneous and inaccurate inferences. During an unusually backward and dull season one particular shade of fly will be numerous, often for many weeks, and occasionally even months; and as no two or three successive years are likely to be identical in this respect, it is essential that observations be assiduously carried on over an extended period, or misconceptions will be the inevitable result. Insects have been described in their first or imperfect stage minutely, whilst the greater part of their existence as flies and perfect insects has been ignored altogether. Other species have been honored by a notice in their decrepit old age, when they are described as beings of a

---

\*The Red Spinner is a favorite fly on some of our waters.

day or hour. This inconsistency is mainly due to the difficulty above noted of drawing correct inferences from limited investigation, and under the varying influences of the elements and seasons.

The next in importance to the angler, of the four different varieties of Up-winged water flies, are the Large or Spring Browns, so-called from their being more prevalent in the earlier parts of the season. The first appearance of this second species is the well-known March Brown\* of the northern and southern counties, and the Dun Drake of the midlands, the streams of which district produce this fly more freely than elsewhere. The term Dun Drake, is applied, because it bears a conspicuous resemblance to the May-fly or Drake in point of both size and attitude, being twice the size of an ordinary dun. When these flies first ascend from the watery depths they are eagerly absorbed by the feeding fish. Though styled the March Brown, they are seldom up before the beginning of April on most streams. After a few weeks of genial weather, the fly becomes of lighter hue, as in the case of the olive dun, but with this difference, that it perceptibly decreases in size. A strange inaccuracy is credited in respect to the first change of this fly. It is supposed to be the female brown, but that is perfectly erroneous, as the difference in sex cannot be distinguished until the final stage of existence, viz., that of spinners, in which they propagate their species. The spinners in this case are called the Great Reds, which are numerous, more or less, just in proportion as their predecessors, the large Browns, have been prevalent; as is also the case with the ordinary Red Spinners of the Olive duns. In May the March Brown is recognized as the Turkey Brown, † light and dark, in accordance with

---

\* A standard fly in America.

† Under this name, my favorite fly for black bass, is known on the streams of Pennsylvania. It is usually tied on a No. 4 Sproat hook.



the weather. This fly diminishes in size as the weather grows warmer. By August the fly is still a little smaller, and is known as the August Brown or Dun. These are seldom numerous, the nympha being generally in a state of torpor in the hot months, as it is a hardy insect, and partial to rough weather. A few Up-winged Browns continue to haunt the surface of rivers and streams for the remainder of the season, but are seldom sufficiently numerous to merit attention.

The Iron Blue Dun ranks next in importance to the Up-winged Browns. This is a distinct species, and is not to be confounded with the Olive Dun, which is double the size. The general prevailing color of this insect is a beautiful deep blue, except upon the body, where there is a faint tinge of mauve, intermingled with blue.

It makes its first appearance in April; in May, however, it is infinitely more plentiful, but has then a mauve-colored body, acquiring a lighter hue as the season advances, precisely similar to the other duns. The fly appears in June and July, but paler in wings and body, when it is recognized as the Little Sky Blue; and in the early part of September is called the Little Pale Blue. Later still it is very plentiful, but darker in shade, until in October it closely resembles the olive shade of the Duns in April; indeed these are frequently taken for half-matured Olive Duns; but this cannot be, as all winged water insects attain full growth and dimensions immediately upon quitting the pupa case. The metamorphosis of this fly is the Jenny (or Jinney) Spinner. This is a beautiful and delicate fly, so delicate that it is a difficult matter to copy it successfully. The color is pure milk-white upon legs, wings and body, except a bright crimson band at each extremity of the last-named.

Each of the three varieties of up-winged water flies live three days, after having ascended from the river's

bed, and burst their "swathings." They then cast their skins, like stripping off a garment, and reappear as spinners. They live about five days in this, the concluding period of their life. We have several times taken for experimental purposes a number of Common Red Spinners, Jenny Spinners, and Great Red Spinners (transformations of the Olive Dun, Iron Blue Dun, and Up-winged Browns). These we have deposited upon the water contained in a fish-hatching box, through which ran constantly a stream of fresh water, the whole being well and closely-fitted over. There they have deposited their eggs, each fly dropping several as it rose and fell upon the top of the water. After this last and most important function of their life had been performed, each having deposited its hundreds of eggs, every sign of vitality vanished, and they appeared lifeless, and merely a flimsy form inflated with air.

By the aid of a powerful microscope we were enabled to investigate minutely, from time to time, several points of special interest to us. By careful and oft-repeated researches we ascertained that from thirty-six to forty days serve to hatch the eggs, when deposited in the summer months, but much longer if in spring; and almost immediately after this has happened, the larva or grub secretes itself amongst the sediment at the bottom of the water, instinct, doubtless, prompting this as security against the numerous enemies which prey upon it. The form of the larva is shown to be elongated, with six perfect legs, and whisked tail, also armed with a pair of formidable forceps, with which its food is seized. Along the sides there is a range of web-like appendages, which serve as fins; and by the aid of this propelling power the larva becomes exceedingly active. In the course of five or six months the larva changes into a pupa, or nympha, by breaking through a filament or outward skin. Upon the shoulders there are now two small pro-

tuberances, which ultimately develop into wings. When in the larva and pupa states the insect is excessively voracious; like the small clothes-moth it feeds, not when fully developed, but when "swathed" up in its tough pliable case. The larvæ of both moth and fly devour many times their own weight in a single week, and this is the case with all water-flies, whether *Ephemeridæ* or *Phryganeidæ* (Up-winged or Flat-winged), which feed only when in the larva and pupa state, absorbing sufficient nutriment to sustain them during the short and final stages of their life. They afterwards appear in their new sphere, first as Duns, secondly, as perfect imagos or insects.

As the eggs of the *Ephemeridæ* had been deposited in May, in the following February, whenever the state of the water permitted, the first flies emerged from their pupa case, rose to the top of the water, and bursting yet another shell-like skin, unfolded their now perfect wings, and appeared as early Blue Duns. A little more genial weather, and the Cockwing and the Olive, from which the fly takes its name, were predominant, the lighter shades appearing as the nymphæ gradually attained maturity, up to mid-summer. April saw the first instalment of Iron Blue, March or Spring Browns also appeared, both being of a lighter shade, and the latter a little smaller in dimensions, after the lapse of a few weeks. Up to July the color of the Duns ranged in the precise ratio we have given, by which time the whole of the nymphæ had attained maturity, with the exception of a few of the Browns, which rose in August, smaller still in size. To have the whole season's supply of the *Ephemeridæ* it is necessary to take Spinners about May, and again in August. The latter produce first the delicate tints, ending with the lead-blue shades that are seen in November.

Such casts as are called the Apple-green, Orange, and

Whirling Blue Duns,\* do not occur anything like annually; they prevail only during a spell of unseasonable weather. A Dun of these pronounced shades may not be observed for several seasons, whilst for some weeks in the succeeding one it may be exceedingly prevalent. If the range of shades previously described are correctly asserted to be dependent upon the state of the elements, and therefore accidental, these latter are doubly so.

The May-fly, Green Drake, or Cadow concludes the order of up-winged insects. This fly is an annual one, appearing upon the majority of trout streams about the first week in June. Throughout Britain it may be said to be in season from the middle of May to the middle of June. These flies are often wondrously numerous. The first four days or so when they begin to come up, the fish seem rather afraid of them, but as they become more numerous they are greedily taken. These flies are common for twelve or fifteen days, when they entirely disappear until the next season. The fish so gorge themselves during the drake season that they lie dormant for some days before they are relieved from the effects of their excess. More has been written upon this than perhaps any other fly. It has been set up as an analogy for the lesser ephemeral orders, which is scarcely correct, as it appears but for a limited period annually; and in the second place the egg† remains in the water two years before it grows sufficiently, and has arrived at a proper state of perfection to ascend. It is also longer lived as a fly. Swammerdam speaks of it as "a being of a day, whose life in a perfect state is compassed in a few hours." Another affirms that "they lay about eight hundred eggs immediately upon the wings being devel-

---

\* These flies are made here and used on our waters.

† The larva.

oped, and the whole are deposited in a shorter time than another insect would consume in laying one.”

Our own experience tells us that they live from eleven to fourteen days—nine days as green, the remainder gray—and that they do not propagate their species until they reach the final or perfect state, viz., that of gray drakes. Nor do they lay eight hundred eggs. Our investigations go to prove three or four hundred to be the utmost possible limit; and, as to their depositing the whole instantly, the idea is absurd.

We have seen, more than once, Stone and Cinnamon flies and common moths lay eggs at the rate of sixty per minute—one per second; but with the up-winged insects the operation is much more leisurely achieved. Floods do not deter or retard the appearance of the water flies, further than what damage may be done in a sandy or loose-bottomed river by the larvæ being crushed or swept away.

When the weather is seasonable, the drake appears upon some waters literally in swarms, so thick that to fill the live-fly basket is often the work of but a few moments. The exact annual time to a few days when they come “up” upon each river is slightly subservient to the weather.

The Gray or Black Drake is the metamorphosis or transformation of the green. The color is black and white, and the fly finely and minutely freckled in the wings. The body is milk white, the ribs faintly touched with black, as also each extremity of the body. The legs and tail are black, the latter being double the length of the former. These flies are only prevalent as the season of the drake begins to wane. They whirl in clouds in the shadows of trees near and overhanging the water, stragglers ever and anon dropping upon its surface to deposit eggs, which occurs particularly towards evening. In this

act they are generally caught by the fish, which incessantly feed, so long as their prey is plentiful.

This fly is not nearly so much appreciated as the green, being in its perfect state more active, for, in common with other ephemeral transformations, it improves more in outward form than inward substance; hence the preference of the wily fish. The Gray Drake\* generally takes shelter under the leaves of trees and bushes during mid-day in sultry weather, emerging in the evening in incredible numbers, and sporting in the air in every direction. When the fly is matured enough to lay eggs it is designated the Spent Black, owing to its gradually getting darker in color towards the end of its existence. The operation of depositing the eggs so exhausts the fly, that it dies immediately on the completion of this function, a hollow shell being all that remains.

This insect, when in its new-born aerial dress, flutters heavily, like the freshly-fledged song bird, and then appears devoid of all sense of feeling; but in its last stage it is too delicate for live-fly fishing; indeed, it is then so marvellously fragile that it may be said to be at the mercy of a breath of wind, the slightest touch ending its existence. In some instances this fly appears of a much brighter green, the metamorphosis being of a freckled red-brown. This is commonly called the "mackerel," light or dark. It frequents slow-running, thickly-wooded streams, but is of little importance to the fisherman.

The Flat-winged flies consist of a far greater variety of species; but, even taking them as a whole, they are of but secondary importance from a piscatorial point of view. We shall now, however, proceed to enumerate the two leading orders of the flat-winged insects which are requisite to a complete equipment.

---

\* A standard fly with us.

The first of these claiming our attention are the water Flat-wings, the leading species of which are the *Phryganeidæ*, consisting of the red, sand, cinnamon, and bank flies, also the grannum or green-tail; and the *Perlidæ*, which family includes the Stone Fly, Yellow Sally,\* Willow, and Needle Fly, or Tail-to-Tail. These flat-winged flies arise from the larva or grub which is found in small twigs, etc., these having been excavated to form a retreat. The Red or Welsh fly is a four-winged natural, its wings lying alongside the body, so as to completely envelop it except underneath, thus forming a roof-like ridge across the back. It is the earliest fly out in the spring, and may be seen upon the first tolerably open day in January, fluttering industriously as it is carried down stream. These are in some districts believed to be the March Brown, but there is, as has been elsewhere stated, a marked distinction between them. It is a very useful fly in the early months.

After the February Red, the next in this order is the Sand-fly, which is precisely similar as to size and attitude, but of a pronounced sandy hue universally. This fly usually makes its appearance in the latter half of April, continuing more or less prevalent during May, and again in the autumn. Like the generality of four-winged flies, it is seldom on the wing, and when so is a solitary insect, but is a favorite with the fish, even when sparsely present.

The Fœtid Brown, or Cinnamon,† follows the sand-fly. This is a much larger insect, being more than two-thirds of an inch in length, from the tip of the head to the tail. In general attitude it is precisely similar to those pre-

---

\* Sometimes called the Yellow May.

† Known by the latter name in America.

viously described, but it is of a darker and more ruddy brown than the sand-fly; it is more plentiful in the autumn than at any other time of the year. Its name has originated from the fact of there being a faint odor of cinnamon emitted by it when handled. It is invaluable for live-fly fishing, but it is seldom "up" in sufficient strength on open water, to make it equally valuable for casting. Being excessively heavy in its flights, its motions and flutterings are very awkward. In July and August it frequents the surface of the water under shelving banks and sheltered places, and is then styled the bank fly. In common with the Spring Browns it is considerably smaller in size during the hot months; but is more numerous on cold days.

The Green-tail,\* or Grannum, completes this order of flies. It appears at first sight like a freckled sand-fly, but upon a more minute inspection, is found to differ considerably in several points. The body has a strange appendage of a conspicuous green color at its extremity. This is its egg-pouch, and it is observed to drop its egg, like the spinners of the ephemeral order, as it rises and falls upon the top of the water.

The *Perlidæ* order ranks next to the above. The most useful we have given as being the stone, willow, and needle flies, also the yellow Sally. The first-named is a very large fly, and in some localities is termed the May fly, as it annually makes its first appearance in that month. There is, however, the same distinctive difference between this and the May fly, or Green Drake, that we have already described in the February Red and the March Brown, with this exception, that the wings of the Stone fly are double the length of those of the Red fly, and lie still more horizontally, being almost flat upon the back

---

\* This fly is made by our tackle dealers, but, so far as I know, is not in general use.



of the insect. Except upon blustering windy days, these flies are seldom "on" in sufficient quantities to excite the attention of the fish; though as a luscious morsel, the large fish seldom ignore even the solitary specimen when it essays a paddling excursion across its native element. Its general haunts are amongst the gravel and pebbles by the sides of streams, hence the name; but when carried by a high breeze to mid stream in any number, the artificial may be used with signal success. The larvæ of these large water insects form food for fish some ten days or more before they are mature enough to "rise," as the grub then becomes very active, and attracts the attention of the fish. The grub, when extracted from the case or twig which it inhabits, is used in a similar manner to the wasp bait and maggot for bottom fishing.

The Willow fly appears in August. This is a well-known insect, and on all our most frequented trout and grayling streams is one of the first flies that the latter fish feed ravenously upon, when coming into condition after the spawning period. The color of its wings is a dark, ruddy, brown blue, with light-colored ribs, and legs a rusty black. Unlike most naturals, these flies, instead of taking their names from their own color, are almost universally known by the term Willow, which appellation may have originated from the fact of their being generally most abundant in the immediate vicinity of willow trees, particularly while upon the wing, when they may be observed in whirling masses just above the surface of the water.

The Needle fly, Needle-brown, or Tail-to-Tail, as it is sometimes called, is a peculiar-looking insect; its wings are folded in a manner so neat and compact, and fit so closely to the body, as to give the observer the impression that it is devoid of them altogether. In the warmest hours of a September day, myriads of them are to be

seen fluttering in clouds in the shade of trees, bridges, etc. They are of a dingy brown shade on the body, legs, and wings, and unless seen in a certain light are almost indistinguishable when in action over the water. There are two sizes of these flies when full grown, the largest being fully half an inch in length, the other about two-thirds that size. This is one of the best of our grayling flies. The fish being partial to small insects, the lesser one is generally used by most fishermen. This fly frequents some streams in lieu of the Willow, and is equally killing. Needle flies are numerous on warm mizzly days, throughout the fall of the year.

The Yellow Sally concludes the list of the *Pertidæ* order deserving the notice of the angler. The fly is of a general primrose tint, and when once seen can never be mistaken. It rises about the middle of June, being more or less numerous during the hot months, but is not much appreciated by the fish. It is seldom really on the water, even when well out, being a stray flier, often descending from a great height to deposit eggs in the water, falling apparently lifeless, but immediately springing up to soar anew, and repeat the operation. The artificials of this fly fail to be effective, owing to their being dressed "winged;" most flat-winged water flies should be dressed "buzz"\* to kill well. The best chance of killing with this fly is during or soon after a passing storm, which beats them down upon the water.

We have now enumerated the three principal orders of winged water insects. A reproduction of one of each some accomplished fly-fishers place upon their casts for all round fishing; but we do not advise our readers to act up to any system, but would rather encourage them to use their own observation, to be quick to take note of

---

\* "Buzz"—Tied palmer fashion with the hackles well down on the bend of the hook.

existing influences and their general bearings on the occasion, and thus to adapt themselves to meet circumstances which would otherwise prove detrimental to sport. The real essence of the art lies in deceiving the fish by a correct copy of any fly that may be at any time absorbing their attention.\*

We have yet briefly to mention the casual killers amongst the numerous tribes of land insects, which may be summed up as follows:—Cow-dung-fly, Small Beetles (Marlow Buzz, or Coch-y-bondu), Oak fly, Blue Bottle, Wren-tail, the Ants, and Gray and Black Gnats.† These flies pass their pupa stage in the earth, either in thickly wooded, or meadow land; they, therefore, do not habitually frequent the water, but are driven upon it by rough weather.

The Cow-dung-fly we have fully commented upon elsewhere in "Notes on the Months." The term Small Beetles, includes the lady-cow and ear-wig, as well as the small members of the beetle tribe proper, which are prevalent more or less throughout the season. The artificial is a simple hackled fly (elsewhere described) which effectually represents the numerous members of the above varieties.

The Oak-fly, or Down-looker, usually accompanies the Green Drake. There is another fly that is commonly used in its natural state, particularly upon thickly-wooded streams; it is often seen upon the trunks of trees, etc., upon which it invariably rests with its head downwards, instantly assuming that position if alighting in any other. In cold or inclement weather, it secretes

---

\* Anglers, both American and English, differ widely on this subject. I have, on many occasions, filled my creel with fine trout using a black hackle, when a dark bug could not be seen during the entire day, over or on the water. This is not an exceptional occurrence.

† The Cow-dung and Coch-y-bondu are killing black bass flies. The gray and black gnats and ants will be familiar to our old anglers.

itself amongst the roots of luxuriant grass or thick moss, until more genial weather prevails. The fly is perfectly flat-winged, and in attitude resembles the house and wood flies. These three flies are, perhaps, the most commonly known British insects.

The Wood fly resembles the domestic house fly in all particulars except size, it being a trifle larger, and is especially numerous in the vicinity of cattle, to which it is very obnoxious, especially in wooded districts. In cold weather, in the fall of the year, all the tribes of wood and house flies become blind, when they are swept upon the water in great quantities, to be picked off by both trout and grayling, especially the latter. The Gray Palmer efficiently represents these drowning insects, when vainly fluttering to extricate themselves from the foreign element.

The Blue Bottle is most in request for live fly-fishing in July and August. It is sometimes cast along with the gray palmer, and renders good account of its attractive powers, but cannot be said to be infallible. The Wren-tail, or Frog-hopper, forms one of the many varieties of winged insects numerous in July. In common with the small blacks, it braves the heat of the noonday sun. The latter fortunately differ very materially in regard to their habits and movements, as they are incessantly hovering over the water, whilst the frog-hopper merely appears accidentally, and, therefore, unintentionally, upon its bosom. It is occasionally to be used with effect.

The Ants\* are only occasionally numerous, but in some localities the red species are common in sandy soils, and amongst wild, broken ground. The black variety are found only in thickly-wooded districts, where they

---

\*The red and black ants are favorites during low water. The eggs are used sometimes with killing effect on the point of a fly hook.

build their hills to a considerable size of small twigs, leaf stems, etc. In sultry weather these little creatures will migrate to the nearest water to indulge in a cooling bath, and, when this happens to be a trout stream, both fish and fishermen experience lively times. Their eggs are much sought after for angling purposes, being excellent bait for almost every description of fresh-water fish, when prepared and used similar to trout and salmon roe.

The Gray and Black Gnats, and, indeed, the whole fraternity of "smuts," arise from the soil of sheltered meadow banks; they are most obnoxious to the fly-fisher when out in any quantity.

Year after year, and century after century, a curious and interesting equilibrium is maintained by nature, with but few deviations, in regard to insect life in this temperate clime. Whilst various members of the beetle, ant, and other orders increase, at intervals, to a really alarming extent in more southern latitudes, in this country a truly marvellous balance of insect existence is preserved by the restraining action of counter influences on the enormous procreative powers with which they are invested. When myriads of flies are observed depositing their eggs literally by millions, upon water or land, we are led to investigate the reason why their material increase is seldom rendered notable, and we find that the mass simply go to feed other creatures, whose sole mission would appear to be to counteract, regulate, and hold in check their kindred species. All insects of the smaller kind, inhabiting the earth or water, feed upon the ova of the different orders of winged insects, the pupæ of which retaliate in turn by preying continuously upon the minute insects, the enemies of their previous existence. Thus by a wonderful scheme of Providence, the perfect chain of animated nature and organized creation is accurately preserved.

When insects arrive at maturity, there is this signal and distinctive difference between the aerial and aquatic species. The former are voracious feeders when in their perfect state; the latter do not, as we have shown, feed at all when in the sub-imago and perfect stages of their existence, so that no devastating results issue from any multiplication of these. The same observation cannot be applied with equal truth to the case of the land insects, which, when plentiful, are the bane of man and beast. Reaumur makes mention of a swarm of May flies or drakes on the Marne, which completely covered him two or three inches in depth, in the space of a few minutes. Most fishermen have experienced something similar, at long intervals, with regard to the water flies in certain localities: this is the result of a combination of circumstances favorable to them. Seasonable weather is always favorable to insect life. A mild winter will tend to destroy the ensuing season's general supply, by causing premature activity, followed often by premature death, or at best by a relapse into a state of torpor. These changes invariably prove prejudicial to the existence of insects. Steady and severe cold, when seasonable, upon the other hand, is not only favorable to insect life, by causing a continued state of torpor, from which they emerge in due season, but also by indirectly preserving them from the attacks of their numerous enemies. It sometimes happens that, from a variety of causes, running water is of a higher temperature than the atmosphere, in dry frosty weather; and as the aquatic insect, prior to leaving its native element, is wholly influenced by it, an uprising of them when the air is too cold for them to live in it, is not by any means an infrequent occurrence. We have observed them rise to live but a few hours, and sometimes only minutes, in the event of there being no sun temporarily to counteract the effects of the keen air.

SWIVEL LEAD



FIG. 1 NEW MINNOW TACKLE



FIG. 2

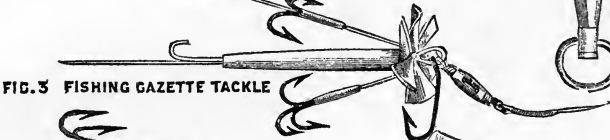


FIG. 3 FISHING GAZETTE TACKLE

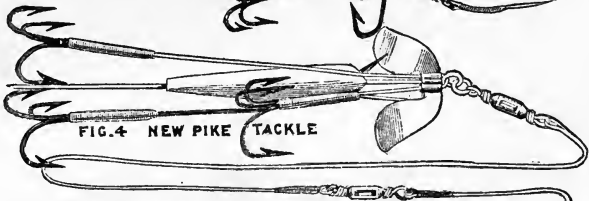


FIG. 4 NEW PIKE TACKLE

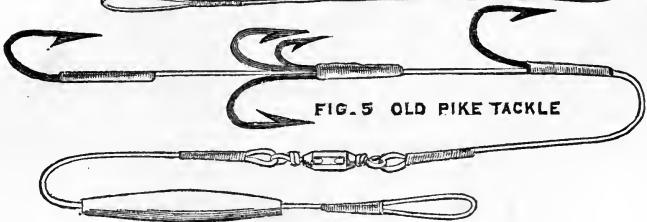


FIG. 5 OLD PIKE TACKLE



FIG. 6 FOSTERS EXCELSIOR BAIT.



FIG. 7 THE UNIVERSAL KILLER





## CHAPTER XI.

## ON FLY MAKING.

FLIES FOR TROUT AND GRAYLING FISHING; THE ADVISABILITY OF COPYING NATURE; UP-WINGED AND FLAT-WINGED ARTIFICIALS; DRESSINGS FOR THE DUNS, BROWNS, MAY FLIES, OR DRAKES; FLAT-WINGED WATER FLIES; LAND FLIES; HOW TO DRESS A HACKLE FLY, PALMER, ETC.; SALMON FLIES.

TROUT AND GRAYLING FLIES.—A really solid advantage the amateur fly-maker enjoys is his ever available ability to produce copies of any special insect the fish may just then be regaling themselves upon, when other lures fail to meet with due appreciation. Trout are often most tantalizingly fastidious; and though occasionally, at rare intervals, they are to be taken by almost anything in the shape of a fly, it is merely a reckless spirit of wantonness that is displayed, in which case sport will prove but indifferent, the fish in reality being merely playing and not feeding. Trout will take down almost anything when in this mood; bits of leaves, twigs, and other floating atoms, we have repeatedly seen them close their teeth upon, when taking observations from the chinks of a wooden foot bridge; but these floating substances we noted invariably rose to the surface almost immediately. But when, on the other hand, there are myriads of any particular fly out, the thorough earnestness displayed by the feeding fish, as they eagerly absorb the abundance of food thus presented upon the surface of their native element, bears a marked contrast to their former demeanor; and when the angler happens not to possess an imitation thereof to present, in nine hundred and ninety-nine instances out of a thousand,

his lure will meet with an unflattering reception.\* It is then that the proficient fly-dresser, by a little display of patience and ingenuity, proves equal to the occasion, and by the prompt exercise of his art, rules the circumstances to which his less accomplished brother of the rod must bow.

Great disappointment is often experienced by the uninitiated (and we regret to have to admit there should exist grounds for honest complaints) in procuring flies dressed to any particular artificial or natural pattern. The prevailing custom would appear to be simply to choose the fly in stock, bearing the best resemblance to the pattern required in its various details; and as this is occasionally limited in its character, the credulity of the fisher is not infrequently imposed upon. These and other tests of patience, the angler, who has become an apt fly-dresser, spares himself. Upon the other hand, it is but fair to point out the little drawbacks it is necessary to surmount.

---

\* The angling experts of England are at odds with each other on the fly question. They are divided between "colorists," who think that color is everything; and "formalists," who hold that the natural fly on the water, at a stated time, must be closely imitated in minutest detail of form and tints of coloring. The former have settled down to a few standard colors, and the latter to the use or ownership of the many hundreds of varieties of artificial flies that now compose the fly fishers' lexicon. Mr. Francis Francis has struck a happy (?) medium, and names thirty-two flies as important ones for use on a trout stream. Mr. Pennell, however, reduces the list to three, all hackles: the green, the brown, the yellow. Perhaps I may be pardoned for a line or so on this subject. Some years ago I was convinced that form and color were not so necessary to secure a full creel, as the proper manipulation of the fly upon the surface of the water. The closer the lure is assimilated to the action of the struggling insect, the surer the rise and strike of the fish. My attention was drawn particularly to this fact, from observing that the large sun-perch (the "Kiver" of Western waters), never rose to the tail fly, but invariably to the dropper, as it danced or skipped over the water under the tension of the current. I fish always down or across stream. On one occasion when taking an outing with an angling companion, we chanced on a large pool, at the upper end of which was a big rock,

First, then, time is essential, as a matter of course, for the practice of this pleasing art. We often hear it asserted "that life is too brief to admit of fishermen making their own flies;" every art and pursuit demand a given amount of application, more especially until a thorough practical knowledge of it is acquired. To claim an exception in the case now before the reader, would certainly be unjustifiable; but in the particular circumstances to which we have made allusion, it cannot, we think, be denied that it is an advantageous accomplishment to the fly-fisher. Another fact, well known to all practitioners, whether amateur or professional, is, that the creditable construction of well-known artificials requires a certain amount of studious application. Many dozens have frequently to be made and discarded before the hand acquires the accurate "knack" for each different description of fly; therefore, with well-known "standards," the professor has unmistakably the advantage, large quantities of each of those most difficult to make being produced before another variety is taken in hand.

---

some five feet in diameter, rising out of the water. Wishing to exchange greetings, my friend stopped on the left of the rock and myself on the right. We found upon inspection that our end flies were identical, gray and black palmers tied very "buzz." Mine was much worn and jagged—his a "spick and span" fresh one. In a few moments, and in a sort of an automatic way, we commenced casting, chatting freely in the meanwhile, our flies dropping within two or three feet of each other. Soon the talk ceased on my part, being stopped by a plucky rise and a lucky strike. Not to be tedious, I then and there killed five fish, and my friend did not get a rise. After the fish had stopped rising, we queried over and discussed the matter without avail, and it was only after I had thrown my flies across the pool in hope of getting a loiterer, that my friend struck the keynote of the solution, as he exclaimed: "Look at your tail-fly—it leaves a wake behind it like a stern-wheel steamer." True it was—my jagged, frayed old palmer was furrowing the water as a plow would a fallow field. From that day I fear that I have been somewhat of a Pennellite on the fly question. I give the chapter on fly tying without further comment, premising that the amateur tyer will get more than one wrinkle from it.

In fly-making, a natural specimen of the fly it is desired to imitate should always be placed before the artist. Man's greatest achievements in the fine arts are admired, and justly so, in proportion to their faithful accordance with the originals of nature. Mere reproductions of these are not nearly so much esteemed; for, though the original canvas may be valued at its weight in gold, even good copies are of small comparative worth. We have often deplored the perverseness of individuals who, misconceiving the object and aim in view, persist in reproducing old renderings, from books and other sources, and thus, instead of endeavoring to improve upon existing or old styles, merely perpetuate them, and are content. Many an old pattern of "artificial" is considered irresistible in its season, owing to past exploits in which it may have figured favorably, when given the post of honor upon the fly-list. Their owners fail to comprehend that their vaunted virtues could and would have been eclipsed in the matter of conquests, had a truer, and therefore better copy been employed in equally favorable circumstances.

The natural insects, common to all pure running streams, are precisely similar upon all waters productive of them; nevertheless the immense diversity in the imitations (so called by courtesy) is simply astounding. To take the Drake, or May fly, as a case in point. Though, comparatively, this is a large and well-known fly, we venture to assert that if a copy of it be obtained from five hundred different fly-dressers, scarcely any two will be alike; and it may be, that not many amongst the better renderings have much in common with the original. To the eye of the experienced fly-fisher, a glance at the handiwork of any fly-dresser proclaims the amount of practical knowledge and experience possessed by him. To distinguish an old style of fly from a more modern one, is a much easier matter; this is a problem, the solu-

tion of which need trouble no individual, as it certainly does not the fish. As we have before pointed out, nature is far too often imitated from memory, conventionality, and tradition. Reproduction in art is a totally different matter from reproduction in nature. The first-named means in reality degeneration. Through such a process, truth, ideality, and efficiency are lost at each successive step down the ladder of routine. Let the aspiring student study and take his ideal and model from nature, and then progress in true worth and efficiency will be effected.

The first thing to note when a strange natural is taken in hand to copy, is the position of the wings; as if it be "flat-winged," it may be dressed hackle, or palmer-wise, instead of being winged; whilst if it be up-winged, it should be dressed with wings nearly erect, and broad in proportion. The reason for this is obvious. The latter, when upon the water, float buoyantly along, over both broken and still water, which, however, is scarcely the case with the first-named, as the majority of these insects, being land flies, naturally fail to take to the water, like the "up-winged" natives; therefore to imitate their buzzing action the copies are usually made up hackled and wingless. The secondary point for consideration is

THE CHOICE OF COLOR, which, we would impress upon the mind of the tyro, requires the exercise of a certain amount of judgment; as what may appear to be the correct thing to look down upon, will in all probability be a glaring departure from the tint required when viewed from underneath. It must ever be remembered that the fish, from their position below the natural fly and the copy, see through them; when viewed thus they will appear, as a general rule, several shades lighter. To distinguish the correct color of a fly as presented to the fish, we know of no better method than to place it in a clear glass of water, and hold it between the eye and the light

in such a position as to be able to see underneath the insect. The precise shade of both legs, wings, and body will then be accurately ascertained.

**HOW TO DRESS THE FLY.**—What we hereafter endeavor to expound may deviate somewhat from the general rules laid down by former writers; but when we state that the method of construction to be hereafter divulged has been to us as good as a patent since we originated the same, we trust our motive in finally making public the result of our researches in this by no means unimportant branch of our delightful art, will not be misconstrued; as has, we fear, been already the case with more than one predecessor and originator of improvements in artificials, whose works have been calumniated by individuals who, to hide their own incompetency, have adopted the plan of criticising the achievements of men of known merit. But we digress. It is customary to make all up-winged artificials with drooping wings. These, when wet, or when drawn through the water, lie perfectly flat on the back of the hook, and when this is the case with a dun or spinner, or other ephemeral, it is a glaring departure from the original. To dress up-winged flies so as to retain their all but erect attitude in the water, and that when subjected to hard and heavy use, we give the following:—Let us suppose for the time being that the intending operator has already fashioned the body, and has in readiness the material for its remaining appendages, viz., the legs and wings. Now, instead of next placing the legs, and lastly the wings, he must reverse the operation by attaching the wings first, the addition of the legs completing the process. To particularize, the wings should not be detached prior to being put upon the fly. The feather should also be ample in dimensions. A half-inch breadth of fibre from a small bird's quill feather, doubled so as to form the separate wings when attached, is about the amount requisite for the March brown, two

thirds of this quantity for the olive dun order, and one half for the iron blue duns. After securing the wings, which should be about the length of the hook, thus a little longer than the body, they are placed in their correct position. The hackle, with which it is intended to form the legs, is then turned or wrapped into position underneath the wings, the whole being well supported by a few well-planted turns of the tying silk, which done, all that remains is for the silk to be knotted or looped off in the usual way, and your up-winged fly is complete. With reference to the first stage of its construction, much necessarily depends upon the precise nature of the material to be used and worked up. The best and most reliable way of reproducing the varying tinges of the bodies of the flies is by the use of raw silks and natural furs. The foundation of the body of the fly is formed as follows:—The hook is taken in the forefinger and thumb of the left hand (point downwards), the tying silk in the right. A few turns of the silk are now given round the shank of the hook. Meanwhile, as a preliminary arrangement, the gut is slightly indented with the teeth at the extremity to be secured. This lessens the chances of drawing, especially in the hands of the tyro. The tying silk should now be untwisted, so as to take all turn out of it, preparatory to wrapping on. This done, the artist works the textile round, leaving a fifth of the shank end of the hook bare to fit on the wings, the gut and hook, in so doing, straining the silk to its utmost tension. If whisks or tails are used, they should be secured by a couple of turns of the silk when the bend of the hook is reached, the fur (if any) to be in readiness. A minute portion is taken by the thumb and finger of the disengaged right hand, and twisted or rolled with the tying silk so as to adhere to that part of it near the hook, which done, the silk thus prepared may now carefully retrace the body, to form the ribs of the fly. These

should be at a regular and natural distance apart. The surplus fur is then to be taken both from the silk left and the body of the "artificial" (which is now complete) by an effective "nip" or two of the finger and thumb, just leaving sufficient upon the hook's shank to faithfully represent the tinge required. When the ribs are of a contrasted hue, more carefulness still is necessary to give due effect. When the wings and legs are attached to the body, after the manner we have pointed out, a prim and neat rendering of an ephemeral is formed in faultless attitude.

The following are the various dressings for the Olive Dun shades:—

**THE FEBRUARY AND NOVEMBER SHADE** (commonly known as the Blue Dun).—Body, a small portion of blue fur spun sparingly on yellow silk; wings, from the field-fare's wing feather; legs, a light dun hackle.

**MARCH AND OCTOBER SHADE** (cock-winged dun).—Body, a small portion of water-rat's fur, spun sparingly on full yellow silk; wings, from an old starling's quill feather; legs, a bluish dun hackle, freckled with yellow, or a blue dun hackle slightly stained yellow.

Those of **APRIL AND SEPTEMBER** (Olive or April Dun).—Body, small portion of blue fur, spun on yellow silk; wings, palest part of a young starling's wing feather; legs, a light dun hackle, freckled with or stained yellow.

*Dark April Dun.*—Rust-colored fur to be used in lieu of the pale blue for body. In September the rust-like shade of body here alluded to is yet more conspicuous. It is then termed in some localities the

*Whirling Blue Dun.*—The body being formed by still more pronounced ruddy fur; legs, a dull ginger hackle. This latter is very difficult to procure. An ordinary ginger Cochin hen's preserved neck, steeped in copperas water, will be found to answer admirably.



*Pale Blue Dun.*—Body to be dressed or formed with pale blue silk; legs, a pale dun hackle; wings, from a starling's short quill feather.

MAY AND AUGUST SHADES (Yellow Dun of May).—Body, palish yellow mohair, mixed with a little pale blue fur, spun upon palish yellow silk; wings, young starling's or fieldfare's quill; legs, a light dun hackle, freckled with yellow.

*Hare's Ear Dun.*—Body, blue mole's fur, dressed with silk of a pronounced yellow; wings, from the redwing's quill; legs, hare's fur from behind the ear.

The name of this dressing is taken, for convenience sake, in common with the rest here given, from the nature of the material used in the copies of the graduated shades of the naturals, which periodically occur as the season advances and recedes.

IN JUNE SHADE (Golden Dun), to be tied or dressed with deep yellow silk, neatly ribbed with fine gold wire; wings from a young starling's longer fiberia quill; legs, a palish dull hackle, freckled with yellow.

The common Yellow Dun is the same dressing, minus the gold tassel, the waxed tying silk being used for the formation of the body.

Those of JULY (Pale Evening White).—Body a little white fur spun on pale buff-colored silk. Wings the palest part of a young starling's wing feather; legs a pale dun hackle.

*Pale Evening Dun.*—Body, yellow martin's fur, spun sparingly on yellow silk; wings, starling, slightly stained yellow; legs, a brassy dun hackle. A pale blue hackle, stained in weak yellow dye, forms an excellent substitute.

*July Dun.*—Body, blue rabbit's fur, mixed with yellow mohair; wings, the bluest part of a fieldfare's wing, stained slightly yellow; legs, a darkish dun hackle. Tying silk, yellow.

The Iron-Blue Dun Family or Order may be dressed as under:—

FOR APRIL AND MAY, also SEPTEMBER AND OCTOBER (Iron Blue Dun).—Body, blue fur from the owl, spun around mulberry-colored silk; wings, from the male merlin hawk's wing; legs, a freckled blue dun hackle, stained slightly by brown dye. Tying silk, mauve. For the light shade, the body should be dressed with a strip of a quill feather, stained the desired hue, or the tying silk only may serve for the purpose.

AUGUST AND SEPTEMBER (Little Pale Blue).—Body, a small portion of pale blue fur, mixed with a little yellow mohair, spun upon pale yellow or primrose-colored silk; wings, from the quill feather, or from the small feathers upon the knob of the wings of the sea-swallow—a pair of the latter to be used back-to-back; legs, a pale dull hackle.

OCTOBER AND NOVEMBER (October Dun).—To be dressed from same material as the shades of the Olive Duns for April. The size the same as the Iron Blue, and therefore one-half that of the olive order.

GENERAL FLIES (Red Spinner).—Body, copper-colored silk, ribbed with round gold thread; whisks, three strands from a red feather from the back saddle of a game cock; legs, fiery brown hackle, from the neck of the same bird; wings, from an old starling's end quill.

*Dark ditto* same as the above, but the floss silk for body, and the hackle for legs, should be a shade or two darker, the latter approaching a claret.

*Golden ditto*.—Body, gold-colored silk, to be ribbed the same as the red spinner; legs, sandy hen's hackle; wings, fieldfare quill.

*Jenny Spinner*.—This is, perhaps, the most delicate fly to copy correctly of the whole species of aerial and aquatic insects that become food for fish. We find it

kills best when dressed buzz or hacklewise. The body should be formed with floss silk of two shades, the ground-work being white, with a bright crimson band near the head and tail. It may also be tied with crimson silk, so as to form a head of that color. The hackle may be a white hen's, or a small white feather from the knob of a pigeon's wing.

The first three shades of spinners are the transformation of the Olive Dun Order. The last given is the metamorphosis of the iron blue.

For the large browns (ephemeral) the following are given:—

FOR MARCH AND APRIL (March Brown).—Body, fur from the back of a hare's neck, spun on reddish buff-colored silk, ribbed with fine gold twist; tails, two strands of a feather from the back of a partridge; legs, a partridge's neck feather. .

FOR MAY AND JUNE—(Light shade, commonly known as the Turkey brown).—Body, light drab fur, ribbed with gold twist; wings, light partridge quill; legs, grisly dun.

FOR AUGUST—(Commonly termed August Dun).—Body, to be tied on, or dressed with ale brown silk, ribbed with yellow silk; wings, from a cock pheasant's wing feather; legs, a pale dull brown cock's hackle.

We now come to the May-fly, or Drake—the Ephemeral series. The green drake, like all the smaller flies, requires copying accurately, in respect to the most minute detail. As we elsewhere pointed out, there exists no greater diversity amongst the imitations of any particular fly, than is the case with this. That it is an extremely difficult one to dress, we readily admit, and that it is quite possible to copy effectually is also readily conceded. But to suppose that much more than one-third the immense varieties of patterns manufactured can be success-

ful is an absurdity, hence it is they are so frequently discarded altogether, the live fly being substituted. But these are not always to be had, even upon the most prolific waters, therefore a good artificial proves a most desirable auxiliary, even to the live-fly fisher. The main point to direct the attention of the artist, is the choice of material. This should take the precedence of all and everything else in May-fly making; skill in constructing it is not nearly so much called for as in the smaller orders of the same species. Indeed, it may be affirmed that the drake, owing to its size, is comparatively easy, whilst the smallest ephemeral insects may be classed amongst the most difficult. The fly-dresser has to reproduce; but, as we have stated, the difficulty lies in procuring the material requisite for a good artificial. Dyed mallard feathers are for the most part used for wings, but of late years natural ones have been largely employed, notably those of the Egyptian goose, which present a decided brown tinge to the eye, but when held up to the light bear a much nearer resemblance to the tint of the natural. For our part we may say that for several seasons we have used the breast and side feathers of the Canadian wood duck, which, even when looked down upon, strikingly favors the peculiar green-yellow tinge of nature's original; and when viewed from beneath, and compared with the genuine thing, the beholder cannot fail to appreciate the similarity. The material to be employed in the construction of the body determines, more than anything else, the floating powers of the fly. Wheaten straw, when rightly tinted, is the best substance to be employed. This should be well secured at each extremity, and a hollow left in the middle of the body. Red-brown colored silk should be used to bind and form the ribs of this. The whisks should be three strands of a partridge's tail feather; the rabbit's whiskers usually used act very detrimentally as regards hooking the fish,

which, as they essay to lay hold of the fly at the tail, are foiled in a measure by the undue stiffness of the head feelers of the animal, which cannot be said to have been designed to grace the tail of anything. As regards legs, these in a floating fly should be ample and full; a freckled breast feather of a ginger hue, entwined with a cock's honey dun hackle, is a combination that answers remarkably well. The fly above described we have found so successful and recommended it so strongly, that it has been dubbed "Foster's Favorite" by the many who now advocate its use. The gray or black transformation of the green drake may be rendered as follows:—Widgeon or dark mallard's feather, dyed pale slate color; body, white straw put on as above, ribbed with dark mulberry-colored silk; legs, two dun cock's hackles, these may be dressed from shoulders to tail; whisks, three strands of a black cock's saddle feather.

*Green Drake.*—Body, straw-colored mohair, ribbed with gold twist; wings, from a mallard's mottled feather, slightly dyed yellow; legs, honey-dun cock's hackle; the head of the fly to be formed with copper-colored silk. To make this fly buzz, a mottled feather from a mallard, stained as above.

For the gray copy, we give the following:—

*Gray Drake.*—Body, white floss silk, ribbed with silver twist, tied on with brown silk; tails may be made from hair from under the jaws of a brown horse; wings, mottled feather from the mallard; legs, a dark dun or black cock's hackle. To make this fly buzz, a dark mottled feather from the mallard. This fly may be used with success from six o'clock until twilight.

*For the Dark Mackerel.*—Body, copper-colored mohair, ribbed with gold twist; wings, from the brown mottled feather of a mallard; tails may be got from under the jaws of a brown horse; legs, a dark mulberry-colored stained cock's hackle.

To take the various species of flies in their proper order, we come next to the *Phryganeidæ* order, which ranges as follows:—

*February Red, or Red fly.*—The body of this fly is dubbed with dark-brown mohair, mixed with claret-colored mohair; wings, from the hen pheasant, or dotterel wing feather; legs, dark-brown feather from a pale partridge's neck, or a cock's hackle of the same color.

*Sand fly.*—Body, fur from the back of a hare's neck spun sparingly on pale orange silk; legs, a pale dull-colored ginger hackle; wing, from a landrail's wing feather.

*Cinnamon fly.*—Body, fur from a hare's neck, mixed with a small portion of sable fur, spun on pale dull orange-colored silk; wings, from a brown hen's wing feather; legs, a pale dull ginger-colored cock's hackle.

*Grannum, or Greentail.*—Body, fur from the hare's neck, spun on fawn-colored silk, with two laps of green floss-silk on the tail; legs, a pale ginger-hackle; wings, the palest part of a hen pheasant's wing feather.

The above being what are usually termed flat-wings, should be dressed as in the old method, *i. e.*, wings last, so as to resemble the naturals.

The *Perlidæ* order ranks next. Some of these it is best not to wing at all; the dun hackle from the knobs of wings of various birds forming an excellent substitute for legs and wings when carefully wound on like an ordinary hackle.

*Stone fly.*—Body, dark-colored fur, spun with full yellow silk, to be ribbed with some silk of same color, unwaxed; wings, from the quill-wing feather of a cock pheasant, or may be cut from a sheet of gutta-percha (pure), dyed in cold blue dye; legs, a black cock's hackle stained yellow; this, if rightly made will form an excel-

lent artificial fly, not to be excelled by any combination of feathers and fur alone.

*Willow fly*.—Body, water rat's fur spun sparingly on yellow silk; legs and wings made buzz, from a dark dun hackle, with a brownish tint in it, or a small dark feather from the merlin hawk's wing.

*Needle fly*.—Body, sable fur spun upon yellow silk, dressed hackle with small brown feather from the knob of a fieldfare's wing. This fly may be formed by a strip of the enamelled quill of a peacock's feather, which forms the alternate shades of ribs beautifully. This has been introduced by a clever southern angler.

*Yellow Sally*.—This should never be dressed winged; it falls upon the water as a heavy beetle would be supposed to do, therefore the wings not being extended are not seen by the fish. The most killing way is to hackle it palmerwise, with a white hen's hackle dyed light yellow, or by the small feather round a white pigeon's wing, stained as above; the body to be yellow mohair.

The casual killers amongst the land flies may be dressed as under:—

*The Cowdung fly*.—To be dressed or tied on with pale dun orange-colored silk; body, yellow lamb's wool, mixed with a little green mohair; wings, from a landrail's wing feather; legs, pale dull ginger-colored hackle.

*Oak fly, or Down-looker*.—Body, pale orange floss silk, tied on with pale lead-colored silk; wings from the woodlark's wing feather; legs, a furnace hackle.

*Marlow Buzz, Coch-y-bondu, of Wales*.—Body, peacock herl, hackle with bright furnace feather. The red tag (fancy fly) is formed by the simple addition of a red tag, or tuft of wool or feather at the tail.

*Brown Palmer, Bracken's Clock*.—Body, black ostrich herl, ribbed with round gold twist, hackled with red cock's hackle stained.

*Blue Bottle, or Beef Eater.*—Body, light blue floss silk, ribbed over with black ostrich herl and silver twist, tied on with brown silk; wings, from an old starling's wing feather; legs, a black hackle.

*Wrentail.*—Body, amber-colored floss silk, or ginger-colored fur from a hare's neck, ribbed with gold twist; legs and wings made buzz from a wren's tail feather.

*Red Ant.*—To be tied or dressed with orange-colored silk, which may be shown at the tail; body, copper-colored peacock's herl; legs, a red cock's hackle; wings, from a redwing's feather.

*Black Ant.*—To be tied on or dressed with pale dull fawn-colored silk, which may be shown at the tail; body, black rabbit's fur, well mixed with copper-colored mohair; legs, a dark furnace hackle.

*Black Gnat.*—Body, ostrich herl; wings, from a starling's wing feather; legs, a dark blue dun, or black hackle.

*Gray Gnat.*—Body, gray mohair, or wool hackle, with sea-swallow feather.

*Red Palmer, or Caterpillar.*—Body, copper-colored peacock's herl, tied with brown silk, ribbed with gold twist, a bright brown red-stained cock's hackle, having a gold-color when held between the eye and the light.

*The Alexandra fly.*—Body, flat silver twist hackled with bright feather of green or blue hue, from the neck of a peacock; wings (if any) from the turkey's wing.

How to dress a simple Hackle:—

The first effort of the fly-making aspirant should be expended upon the wingless artificials; of these there are two kinds, the plain Hackle and the Palmer; the former is the best to commence with, it being the easiest to make; but before attempting to describe the method, we would remind our readers that there is a vast distinction between practical and verbal teachings. Observation in



these matters is superior, as a source for conveying knowledge, to reading; therefore, where available, a few lessons from a proficient will be found highly beneficial.

The process of forming the body for a Hackle fly is not identical with the same operation in the winged one. In the construction of the latter, a small portion of the shank of the hook itself is left bare to fix the wings upon, to thereby form the head neatly. This, however, is formed, to begin in the case of the buzzy or hackle fly, by a few turns of the silk at the extremity of the shank; a little blank is then left for the hackle to fit or fill in; the body is then to be formed in the usual way. This completed, the hackle feather must be taken in hand, first having been stripped of its downy surplus fibres, the root of the stem is secured by a couple of turns of the tying silk at the shoulder of the fly. The hackle thus secured at its lower extremity, is ready for fitting in. Its point is then to be taken hold of with the tweezers, and two or more turns of the feather given; the end is then to be secured by a turn or two of the silk, the invisible knot formed, and the fly is made, wanting only the silk end to be cut carefully away to complete the thing. The Palmer is artificial that is hackled from head to tail, such as the bumbles, caterpillars, etc. The process of body making is identical, in this instance, with the hackle fly just detailed, except a little addition in the shape of herl, a strand of which is wound around the gut and silk, the feather being turned over this, and the bit of tinsel or silk, by way of ribbing, going over the whole, for the sake of both use and ornament.

We append a few dressings for the various bumbles and palmers, which, though in some instances deemed fancy flies, are often good killers.

*Bumble, ordinary.*—Hackle, white hen's, slightly stained blue; body, peacock herl, ribbed with orange and puce-colored silk (floss); tying silk, brown.

*Mulberry Bumble*.—Hackle, dun hen's; body, peacock herl, ribbed with mulberry-colored floss silk; tying silk, claret.

*Red Bumble, or Earwig*.—Hackle, red cock's, stained; body, peacock herl, ribbed with gold silk; tying silk, dark brown.

*Honey dun Bumble*.—Hackle, honey dun hen's; body, peacock herl, ribbed with orange floss silk; tying silk, yellow.

*Furnace Bumble*.—Hackle, furnace cock's; body, peacock; or black herl, ribbed with dark orange silk; tying silk, red brown.

*Black Palmer*.—Hackle, black cock's, ribbed with fine silver twist; tying silk, black.

*Golden Palmer*.—Hackle, bright furnace; body, peacock herl, ribbed with gold twist.

*Gray Palmer*.—Hackle, cock's, with black centre and whitish gray edge, ribbed with fine round silver tinsel; tying silk, black.

A variety of palmers may be made by intermixing the materials here given for the particular shades.

**SALMON FLIES**.—In the construction of these there exists a grand distinction. The taste and fancy of the operator are called into request, and nothing in nature demands his study and attention more. A happy combination and contrast of various hues and colors, from sombre to brilliant, are the main object.

Salmon are extremely effeminate in the love of finery and tinsel, especially in the case of habitually discolored waters. There are rivers upon which flies of a more sombre hue than the general run are used; but the bright and brilliant combination is found irresistible, more or less, wherever salmon are to be found, when they are in a mood for rising and gambolling. The great thing to keep in the mind's eye when choosing or con-

structing a salmon fly, is the shine through the feathers, wool, mohair, etc., when held above the head, and thus viewed from beneath.

Some dressings are almost of one universal dull shade, or no shade at all, when held in the posture seen by the fish; others will have the color rightly seen shining through in a few patches; but the correct thing is to get the whole of the legs, tail, and body to shine brilliantly through, as well as when looked down upon, and the fault will be not of the fly if it be refused by the fish. The materials used for salmon flies are especially picked with a view to their effect when seen from below; as for instance, the hard-to-be-procured pig's wool, which for transparency of shade stands well nigh unequalled; also mohair, which, though of finer texture, possesses the same characteristics. These, when well placed upon the hook shank, shine most effectively when wet, and viewed from below. Another feature in the arrangement of the salmon fly, the enormously large, and in many cases heavy hook, has to be floated as long as it is possible, and that in a right position. The old arrangement was best calculated to meet this difficulty, large wings being attached so as to preserve the side posture of the lure as it rested upon the water.

We give a few odd salmon flies for general use, that are not at present generally known. Prefixed to these are a few of those most commonly in use:—The Spanker, the Rob Roy, the Spartan, the 'Tam o' Shanter, and the Mac Sporen.

*Description of the Spanker.*—Tag, flat single tinsel and cerise floss silk; tail, golden pheasant's topping; a few strands of scarlet flamingo's quill feather; body, orange, light and dark, and cerise floss silk bound over an old cock's hackle stained slightly sky-blue, the latter being palmered from the head to the tail, another of these forming legs; wings, turkey, with several side strands of

argus pheasant wing feathers, and red, yellow, and puce-colored feelers or strands.

*The Rob Roy.*—Tag, gold (flat) and orange floss silk; body, orange mohair, graduating through full and dark orange to dull red; legs, guinea-fowl neck feather, stained yellow, and a black cock's hackle, also stained yellow wings, black turkey feather; side feathers, jungle cock's hackle; streamers, yellow and red; head, black ostrich herl

*The Spartan.*—Tag, gold (round), white floss silk and peacock herl; tail, three strands from a green feather from the neck of a peacock, and a few strands of yellow and scarlet lucan breast and neck feathers; body, hackled with claret stained hackle, wound over with gold twist (heavy round) and bright-colored silk; legs, dark blue hackle, and guinea-fowl feather over all; wings, golden pheasant's tail feather, ditto neck or tippet feathers for sides, blue chatterer's over all; head, peacock's herl.

*The Tam o' Shanter.*—Tag, red silk silver twist (round); tail, a few yellow and red spires of macaw feathers, helped with a few strands of blue or green peacock's neck feather; body, pig's wool, navy blue, with broad flat silver twist; legs, rich fiery brown hackle; wings, bustard feather; sides of ditto, American wood duck feather; a few strands of argus pheasant's dark feather to be also added in larger flies.

*The Mac Sporren.*—Tag, flat silver, and blue silk. Body, fiery brown pig's wool ribbed with round gold twist; legs, orange and purple, hackled (stained); wings, golden pheasant, red sides tail feathers; toppings, large strands of albatross wing feather; streamers red and green over all, kingfisher's feathers, or blue chatterer.

The following are well-known dressings:—

*Jock Scott.*—Tag, gold twist; tail, one golden pheasant topping, and Indian crow feather; body in two parts;

head, part black floss silk, with silver twist and palmered black hackle; tail ditto, gold colored; at each joint are tied several toucan points, these being backed up by two turns of black herl. For wings, white tipped turkey feather fibres of pintail bustard, brown mallard, with one long topping, and yellow, red, and green streamers over all, a jungle cock on either.

*The Butcher.*—Tag, gold twist and orange floss; tail, a single topping of golden pheasant, with band of black ostrich herl; body, alternate turns of red and full blue, either mohair or pig's wool, broad silver tinsel, palmered with claret hackle; wing, mixture of brown mallard, bustard, peacock wing, wood-duck, golden pheasant tippet and rump feathers; streamers, blue and yellow over all; head, black ostrich herl.

*The Doctor.*—Tag, scarlet silk and fine gold twist; tail, one topping; body, light blue floss silk, palmered with medium blue hackle, broad silver tinsel and twist; legs, blue hackle, with brown grouse or partridge over all; wing, argus pheasant's, brown turkey, and bustard; streamers, yellow, blue, and claret; black herled head.

*The Shannon.*—Tag, gold tinsel, and lemon-colored silk; tail, scarlet ibis or flamingo, two toppings, and blue macaw, black ostrich band; body, alternate colored silks, beginning at the tail end, pale blue, full orange, violet and medium green, the alternate colors being set off by a hackle of the same shade, also ribbed with ostrich herl dyed same color as alternate joints; wings, two yellow macaw feathers, black-centered (usually), a single strip of dark argus pheasant on either side, also a few fibres of golden pheasant tippet, two small blue chatterer's feathers, and two large toppings over all; legs, fiery brown feather, black head.

*Blacker's Gaudy Fly.*—Tail, two slips of brown mallard, and one topping or crest feather (golden pheasant);

tag, gold orange floss and ostrich herl; body, one-third crimson, palmered with black hackle, one-third scarlet, with scarlet hackle, finish the body with crimson and scarlet hackle over it; wings, well mottled red and black turkey, feather off golden pheasant's back under it; streamers, red and blue; legs, guinea-fowl feather; head, ostrich herl.

*The Rainbow.*—Tail, light greenfeather, pheasant's topping, few fibres of bright green feathers; tag, flat, gold; body, pig's wool, graduating from bright yellow through orange, scarlet, to purple, and broad gold tinsel; wings, two toppings and two jungle cock's hackles, and two mottled feathers from under snipe's wing; streamers, crimson; legs, blue and brown hackles.

*The Spey Dog.*—Black pig's wool body, sparingly ribbed with broad silver tinsel, to be palmered with black-cock saddle or side-tail feather, the thick end of hackle terminating at tail end of fly; in addition to the flat silver tinsel, gold of half the width is also run from head to tail; wings, golden pheasant tail; left bushy, and a few fibres of brown mallard, to be shouldered with a teal hackle.

*The Parson.*—Tail, two toppings, and a few fibres of peacock's blue neck feathers; tag, silver tinsel and full red floss; body, a turn or two of golden floss, then orange pig's wool shading gradually darker up body, ribbed with silver twist, palmered with orange hackle; legs, hackle of dark shade; wings, two golden pheasant tippet feathers, two pairs of toppings, wood-duck and turkey on either side.

*The Ranger.*—Tag, silver twist and gold-colored floss silk; tail, red breast-feather of golden pheasant, and a topping footed with two turns of black ostrich; body, fiery brown pig's wool one-half, remainder pale blue ditto, to be palmered with blue hackle; legs, wood-duck hackle

from under wing ; wings, two tippetts, a couple of jungle cock's hackles, with a topping over all.

---

## CHAPTER XII.

### FLY FISHING FOR TROUT AND GRAYLING.\*

ATTRACTIONS OF SURFACE FISHING; THE ROD, LINE, AND WINCH; CASTING, STRIKING, PLAYING, AND LANDING; THE WET AND DRY FLY SYSTEMS; BROOK FISHING; METEOROLOGICAL EFFECTS ON SPORT; NIGHT FISHING; THE DOVE.

The superiority of the art of Fly-fishing over all other systems of angling is universally acknowledged. The ever-exciting nature of surface fishing adds a zest to the sport, unknown to the other branches of the art piscatorial. The high pitch of expectation experienced as the rising fish daintily "plop" off the insects around, extends a highly exhilarating influence over both mind and body. The whole of the faculties are thus concentrated in one focus, ever stimulating to still greater earnestness and efficiency. It is owing to these characteristics, this scope for science and skill, that this sport is and has been the chosen recreation of men of the greatest celebrity and the highest attainments of modern times. Since the time of Walton the angler's skill has advanced wondrously, whilst keenness of perception and wariness have developed amongst the denizens of the liquid element in a degree quite proportionate. The well educated inhabitants of the classic streams of the Midlands and of the south, the former clear from the limestone district of the

---

\* We commend this chapter to the careful reading of American anglers.

Peak, and the latter pure from chalk districts, require no small proficiency and tact to secure even moderate sport generally ; nevertheless the accomplished fly-fisher can usually manage to bag a respectable dish, even under circumstances adverse to sport. On the other hand we have a multiplicity of trouting streams and brooks, especially those north of the Tweed, whose fish are in a manner unsophisticated, and comparatively unacquainted with the wiles of man. Amongst these the young student, on commencing operations, will do well to make a selection. The adept at flying for trout, when at work in real earnest upon the banks of a well-stocked stream, is a striking figure, exemplary of the true fisherman. The gracefully erect though expectant attitude, the latter assumed upon the delivery of the fly, the slender pliable rod, the long floating line and gossamer gut, combine to constitute an ideal rodster. Before entering fully on the details of the subject, we would jot down a few brief instructions for the special benefit of the novice, who, aspiring to proficiency, must be prepared to acquire experience at some cost ; and our object is to reduce that cost as much as possible.

The first consideration that should engage the attention of the tyro is throwing or casting ; and after that has been well practised and a ten or twelve yards cast can be neatly made, he may essay striking and playing. Dace or Perch in the summer months afford ample scope for the acquirement of these accomplishments. It is the determined will to succeed that attains its object ; and when the resolve is once taken there is the immediate response of the will to the perceptive powers seen in the discernment of a rise, and at once, and without delay, the quarry is successfully struck. Well do we remember our first take with the fly ; filled with the ardor natural to youth we were foolish enough to resolve to effect a capture prior to quitting the river's brim. All the day



we flogged and fished, the result being simply nil; ten, twelve, and thirteen hours passed away without so much as moving a fin. The summer twilight set in, shadowing the outlines of the surrounding landscape. Still our resolution was firm, and in keeping with a set purpose we presented the lure more gently, and with greater precision upon the edge of the shadows caused by the rising moon, where the heavy 'switching' sound, repeated at short intervals, proclaimed the daily dinner hour of a veteran. After casting for some time directly over him, we finally hooked the fish. As we had had the discretion to fit up a strong collar\* to carry the large fly employed, we had very little difficulty in landing our quarry, which was afterwards found to measure seventeen inches in length, and nine and one-half inches in girth, scaling two and three-quarters pounds, a venerable monster in truth to our boyish eyes.

Care and patience in execution are required, after the rudiments of the art have been acquired; a non-observance of these is sure to materially interfere with sport. Perseverance is all very well in its place, but when unaided by the exercise of due care and tact in presenting the lure, it will meet with small result. The tyro should therefore practice assiduously, ever bearing in mind that much as he may admire and aspire to a nearer acquaintance with the scaly beauties, they are coy and ungrateful. The instant they become aware of his paying them the least attention, they move contemptuously away; and no matter how lovingly he drops them a line, all further correspondence is thanklessly declined. It behooves him therefore to keep out of sight as much as possible, never allowing the sun to extend his shadow across the stream, always also avoiding conspicuously bright clothing; for notwithstanding the naturalist's persistent assertions as

---

\* The collar, casting line, lash or point are names indiscriminately used in England to designate the leader—so called in the United States.

to the dullness of the eyes of fish, owing, it is affirmed, to the skin of the head covering the pupil of the eye, the trout fisher knows very well that in their own element they habitually exercise the most keen and discriminating powers of vision, when the water is clear; and any moving or brightly-colored objects outside it attract their attention.\* In order to deal comprehensively with our subject, for the more especial edification of the tyro, we shall proceed to allude in detail to the leading items already referred to as being essential to success, viz.:—Casting the Fly, Playing or Landing, and Killing a Fish. Before doing so, however, the necessary appliances must engage our attention.

The ROD, REEL and LINE should be well adapted to act perfectly and in concert with each other. We have already pointed out the inconvenience and disaster arising from the common practice of employing implements totally incapable of working together evenly. The intending purchaser most frequently considers what is the strength, length or thickness of line required for some specified water or fish, and not for a particular rod. The rod forms the first subject of attention; the winch, or reel and line being next chosen, with a view to the harmonious working of the whole, the reel to balance, and the line to suit the “play” of the tool. This is of the most vital importance. Fly-rods are made of many different woods and dimensions. It is a noteworthy fact, however, that during the two centuries that have elapsed since Cotton first wrote upon what afterwards developed

---

\*I have always been under the impression that it was not the substance of our presence, but the shadow of it, that startled the fish; that when fishing with the sun's rays full on our front, and even on dark, cloudy days, our body and moving rod-arm, although throwing no shadow upon the water visible to the human eye, were reflected upon the stream to an extent appreciable and alarming to the fish, indicating to them an unusual condition of affairs that boded no good and placed them upon their guard.

into the most artistic and scientific branch of angling, the length of the fly-rod has diminished by more than one-half. Notwithstanding this diminution of size, and we may also add of weight, the casting powers of the rodster have been so much augmented, that almost double the distance may now be neatly covered by the adult adept than was effected with the unwieldy weapons of our forefathers.\* The propelling power of the fly-rod depends largely upon the material of which it is constructed.† The fine-grained woods of the tropics exceed our own in point of strength, durability, and weight-sustaining powers.

The following are the materials and dimensions of a really serviceable fly-rod for small stream fishing:—Three joints or parts, each three feet six inches, the butt to consist of hickory or washaba, the middle joint of best washaba, greenheart, or blue mahoo, the top of snake-wood, or best jungle cane, the whole being ten feet six inches. The ferrule at the top of the butt should be  $\frac{6}{16}$ th of an inch inside; the one at the top of the middle joint one-quarter of an inch. The actual weight of a rod of this description will be small.‡

The points to receive attention are strength and pliability; a combination of these forms the perfect casting-rod; and the more these qualities are exemplified in a rod, the greater the distance to be covered by it, and that

\*The Casting at the Tournament held in New York City in 1882 attests the truth of the statement in the text.

†This dictum of our author will be forcibly "backed up" by every manufacturer on both continents. Makers of rods of split-bamboo, greenheart, lancewood, Bethabara, hornbeam, *et. al.*, are of one accord, at least, on this point.

‡The proper and standard weight of the rod is rated in England at one ounce to each foot—ten feet, ten ounces.

with perfect precision. With a view to extend in the direction here indicated, we have made many experiments with metal and wood of every variety, as also with other substances of pliancy and strength. Metal, either hollow or solid, is too heavy and cumbersome; wood of greenheart, red locust, snake, and other descriptions, proves strong and pliant, and is so when spliced, like the mast of a ship, or similar to the glued-up American cane rods; but there is no especial advantage to commend them, seeing the weight is increased by something like one-third over the same substance solid and non-glued. The modern three yards rod, as we have said, can be made to deliver more line, and that in a more elegant and sportsmanlike manner than a longer one.

But the question naturally arises, if the fly-rod has been diminished one-half during two centuries, of what dimensions is it likely to become in the immediate future? Our reply is, that in the course of a decade or so, still further reductions will take place. The length of a rod, as is now well known, has very little to do with the distance it can be made to cast the fly; the casting powers entirely depend on the pliancy and strength, hence it is that the very hardest, and we may also add, the most weighty (for one characteristic is almost inseparable from the other) woods are so far superior to open-grained northern timber. Bone, as is already known, is too heavy, buffalo horn is too limber when dressed in tops. The result of our investigations is, that a combination of the best metal and the best wood, would, if arranged correctly, and in right proportions, be an advance in a desirable direction. We therefore had a rod made of the very best of strong woods, with a fine bevelled steel centre, and this proved when, after some alterations, it was completed, to bear out the hopes conceived in respect to it. We had been enamored of this idea theoretically, practically it gives every promise of ultimately meriting

the pains and researches we bestowed upon it.\* The reel upon the new rod is made inside the butt, so to speak, thus all annoyance of the line entwining around the reel is entirely avoided.† The general working of the implement proves this to be a decided advantage over the old side-fixing system.

THE LINE should be plaited of water-proof silk. The eight-plait water-proof fly lines have gradually, during the last forty years, superseded the old hair, as well as the hair and silk lines. As we have elsewhere stated, silk is the strongest textile, and, when duly protected from the action of the water, cannot be surpassed for surface fishing. The new Acme Line is a further improvement on the above. It contains a fine strand or thread of annealed and specially prepared copper wire, either in the plaiting or in the centre of the line, the whole being carefully water-proofed.‡ The Acme is guaranteed to extend the rodster's powers considerably.

THE REEL should be of bronze, or brass, and the handle should be attached to a revolving plate, instead of a

\* The wire-centered re-enforced rod was made in America fifteen years ago. In 1868, Mr. Hyde, inventor of the "Hyde Clip" for fly-books, made two rods on this principle. The wood used was cedar, and a two-jointed rod was constructed with a small steel wire running through it from end to end. One of these rods is still in existence. About two years ago Dr. Rippard, of Westminster, Md., (since deceased) patented a rod of similar construction, and through a fishing-tackle house an effort was made to introduce them to the trade, but without success. Recently Mr. C. Bremaker gave a description in "The American Angler" of a wire-centered rod of his own invention, and attested in strong terms to its qualities of strength and pliancy. From the above notes it will be seen that the invention (?) of Mr. Foster is not a new thing to American anglers, many of whom do not see any value in a rod re-enforced on the wire-centered principle.

† The Hancock enclosed reel has been for some time on the American market, and, notwithstanding the merit of the principle, it has fallen flat; owing mainly, I judge, from its weight and clumsiness.

‡ The Acme Line has not been introduced in this country.

miniature windlass. This again is an improvement upon old-style abominations. Who has not experienced annoyance and loss from the entanglement of the line around the fancifully turned winch handle, just at some critical moment when line was imperatively wanted? And who can measure the amount of loss this improvement alone, when generally adopted, will prevent?

Multiplying reels are now discarded in favor of a plain check reel without surplus and complicated cog wheels to clog and get out of order. The new reel, shown upon the new fly rod, is an ordinary reel put upon the butt in the centre, instead of at the side of the rod butt. These may be attached to any rod, when the socket is of a fitting diameter. A small screw or rivet will secure it permanently, or it may be temporarily screwed and used upon it, as well as the handy side-fitting reels, and can be put on any rod.

THROWING THE FLY, contrasted with other branches of the angling art, has been little written upon, and seeing that this is the chief obstacle in the path of the beginner, and also the most important acquirement of the proficient practitioner, we think the omission a serious one. To this subject we have devoted much attention, particularly in the construction of new and improved implements for its more ready attainment and practice. It is a well established axiom that in skillful casting lies the chief condition of success. "He can throw a good line," is equivalent to asserting the proficiency of a rodder, whether he be fly, mid-water, or bottom fisher.

The ordinary routine cast is the first to be practised and acquired by the tyro. This is accomplished by bringing round the rod so as to describe a half circle from over the left shoulder, and delivering it directly over the right, the action emanating from the wrist and elbow only. It is capital practice for the young student to cast

upon a lawn or any closely-cut turf. Line to the length of the rod should first be delivered efficiently and neatly, when a hat should be placed as the receptacle of the fly; after the distances have been lengthened at intervals a tumbler may be substituted, and finally a small wine glass. When these different exercises have been successfully accomplished, with a fair length of line, the rodster may safely try his hand upon the bosom of the watery element. Lightness and precision follow practice and experience. The exercise of casting into a floating walnut shell is a feat, the accomplishment of which, at a distance of not less than a dozen yards, betokens a fair degree of proficiency and precision in casting.\*

In fly-fishing the ever changing geological bearings, the varying meteorological influences, the position of trees and other impediments, necessitate a constant change of tactics in order to reach the feeding fish, who, as they become more schooled, take up the most inaccessible and secluded positions. Although some streams are comparatively narrow, it is not always incumbent upon, or advisable for the fisherman to take up his stand upon the verge of the water. "To fish fine and far off," as Cotton, the father of all fly-fishers expresses it, is infinitely better whenever practicable. Broken water should be chosen by the novice to commence upon, as while fish are extracted by him from the rapids, and purling streams, etc., the slower running and still waters may prove beyond his attainments.

After precision and lightness of execution are attained, the casting distance should next be extended, and upon this point we may briefly say that more depends upon the line and rod than, generally speaking, upon the rodster. With an unusually light and stiff rod it is often a

---

\* "Accuracy and delicacy" are awarded first place by English fly-casters; "distance" second. This fact should be borne in mind by the future managers of American Casting Tournaments.

matter of great difficulty to get out properly a few odd yards over double the rod's length. The same result ensues when the reverse is the case, with a very pliable tool fitted with a stout heavy line. The rod in this case is in peril of parting in the middle, or "breaking its back" so to speak, whilst the line, if unreeled to any extent, will constantly be in a state of entanglement. A great deal depends upon getting accustomed to the particular "swing" of the rod, as when this is the case all other implements are generally rejected in favor of "one like the last." Hence it is that so great a diversity exists, even amongst the oldest and best hands, upon every well frequented water. Another consideration is the strength of the muscles. This has so important a bearing on the wielding of the rod, that it is yearly more and more taken into account by the gradual adoption of shorter and lighter rods. As we have previously stated, we have always paid considerable attention to the introduction of suitable appliances for casting, and that more especially upon fine and clear waters. The great difficulty experienced by young fly-fishers in acquiring the ability of getting out a good line, we have attempted to remedy by the invention of an entirely new line, which, from its peculiar construction, combines weight and strength with excessive fineness. We allude to the now well-know "Acmè" fly-line, which, since its introduction, has given such general satisfaction that the practical results now manifest warrant the conclusion that by the removal of the main stumbling block in the beginner's path, namely, the difficulty of a good delivery in casting, a great and important desideratum has been attained. From the testimony made public through the medium of the press, it has been proved that the throwing powers of both tyro and proficient have been augmented considerably by its use. We allude in detail to its construction, etc., elsewhere. All that is needful to



be observed here is that through the medium of the "Acme Wire-line" the novice may with a few hours' practice, cast as effectually and efficiently as he might by the practice of as many months with the old style lines.\* With reference to the degree of skill and proficiency in the delivery of the fly, the talent of the oldest and best fly-fishers varies. The real adept will adapt himself to surrounding circumstances, casting over intervening boughs and bushes, now over an impending rock or boulder, or around some partially submerged substance in midstream, or jutting portions of the river's bank, without regard to any orthodox principle or rule.

In short, a thorough command of the rod and line is as essential and important as the wielding of the whip in the case of a tandem or four-in-hand drive. We are reminded by this analogy that the most skillful cast we ever knew wielded the whip: we refer to the famous Royal coachman, Tom Bosworth: Old Tom had, in the early part of his life, driven three British Sovereigns, viz.—the Fourth George, the Fourth William, and finally, for a lengthened period, Her Majesty Queen Victoria. As a successful fisherman, Old Tom, when known to the writer, was unsurpassed. He would often fish in the wake of several rodsters, whose energy would exceed their skill, and would extract not infrequently three times their weight of fish, by skillfully and carefully casting over the awkward and most unlikely looking

---

\*I have carefully abstained from critical notes, as an indulgence in them would have greatly encroached upon the space allotted me, but I cannot pass by the claim of merit made for this new copper-threaded line, without expressing my fear that the laudatory paragraphs are simply advertising mediums used to place a profitable "tack" upon the market. I do not doubt that long casts may be made with it—a clothes line impelled by a sinewy arm would doubtless show a marvelous reach—but the delicate delivery of the feathers, which, now and then, on a passing breath of wind, will flutter as they fall, would be sadly demoralized by the drag of this metallic re-enforcement of a reel line.

spots, which the majority of anglers would rarely dream of trying. A favorite freak of his with the whip was to take the pipe from the teeth of a passing pedestrian by a carefully calculated whirl of the lash, and this aptitude was as remarkably exemplified, for a limited distance, in his use of the rod. Bosworth originated the Coachman Fly, so much appreciated for night-fishing.

The cast most useful in boisterous weather is the Welsh or Spey Throw. This is more commonly known to fly-fishers for salmon. The line is whisked off the water by an upward and backward movement of the rod, but is delivered forward again by a rapid lower whisk of the rod's upper portion, just as the last of the reel-line leaves the top of the water. This raises the line above all impediments and encumbrances in the shape of bushes, etc., fringing the river's bank.\* Personally we make our longest cast by it. The usually-deemed impregnable positions of the most choice and best fed fish are brought under fire by a resort to this cast, as indeed are all fish out of the reach of the usual run of rodsters. Some fly-fishers appear never to aspire to a greater distance than the width of the stream or brook most fished by them. For mountain or moorland stream, Scottish beck and burn, and Welsh torrent, this may answer amply, but upon the comparatively wide and open water something further and more extensive is needed. Every fly-fisher should be able to cast at least twenty yards of reel-line. The importance of artistically getting out the lure is

---

\* The Welsh or Spey Throw is identical with the "underhand" or "rolling" cast, introduced by Mr. Pritchard at the New York Casting Tournament, with which he made a cast of ninety-one feet, by actual measurement. This unprecedented official record I can vouch for, which my presence in the boat of the judges enables me to do. The Foster Brothers who have compiled the notes of the author, their father, claim that he or they have thrown, with a single handed fly rod and the Acme line, ninety-seven-and-a-half feet. This cast unfortunately for its value of record, is not official.

fully recognized in districts where the natural surroundings render it a matter of vital importance, but as a general thing it is a point not so well practised or understood as could be wished.

STRIKING requires a keen eye, and a quick wrist-effect to a greater extent than is easy to be conceived by the tyro. A really accomplished fly-fisher is not so frequently heard to complain of the fish rising short. A dilatory rodster, whenever the fish prove too quick by rejecting the steel-hearted lure, after giving him the customary "pluck," falls back upon the old and convenient excuses, the tendency of which is to charge the effect of his own shortcomings to the fish. Many theories are expounded in reference to the matter of striking. Some anglers recommend an instantaneous "knock," others advise a momentary pause after the lure has been closed upon as being the correct thing, and some affirm that, owing to the difficulty of acquiring the right "knack" of driving home the delicate fly-hook, far more fish are lost by an unnecessarily heavy and spirited motion of the rod in a moment of excitement than if striking were not adopted at all. The late Mr. James Ogden, an old friend of ours, never let slip an opportunity of declaiming against random striking, always affirming that young and inexperienced anglers lose the major portion of the fish they raise through awkwardness in this matter. "I have"—says he, in the columns of a leading sporting journal—"in the course of my experience seen some of the best rods and tackle broken by this means, during a momentary excitement. I strongly recommend young fishermen not to strike at all." We can fully endorse this statement; but to be more explicit, although it may be advisable for the youthful aspirant to avoid needless disaster, it is certainly advisable that he should acquire the right and ready "knack" of hooking his rise in an effective and skillful

manner. The result of our experience upon this subject is as follows:—

First :—It is an exceedingly difficult, if not impossible, thing to successfully hook a fish that has risen at the end of sixteen to eighteen yards of line, in the event of his not hooking himself, as the impetus given to the line through the medium of the rod on the appearance of a rise, reaches the scene of action too late to be of any utility. As a matter of course, when the feeding fish are near at hand, and the line is taut and straight, a small jerk from the wrist will have full chance of being effectual, and in this case the single moment's grace may be granted with safety in still water, as the trout are, generally speaking, more leisurely in their movements. It is essential that the details appended should be thoroughly mastered in order to attain proficiency. Our own private plan, after the delivery of the fly in the extending circle of the last rise, is to look out for the gleaming side of the fish as it rises, in order to get which the eye should be centred within the circle, but some little distance nearer the rodster. When this habit is contracted, as it easily is with practice, wonderful accuracy will be attained in efficient striking, even at the longest distances.\*

Second:—The action and amount of force required to hook the fish, are an intricate matter to deal with definitely, as so much depends upon the bearings of the situation. That small fish require gentle usage, whilst comparatively large ones necessarily require more impulsive treatment, is an aphorism well known to all ; but that the rodster should be cognizant to a nicety of the weight-sustaining power of the fine tackle, and should also be able to calculate accurately the probable result of a san-

---

\* When fishing down stream on our mountain trout waters, the fish, nine times in ten, hook themselves ; at least such has been my own experience.

guine stroke of the hook upon the hard and bony part; or, upon the other hand, on the soft and impressible portion of the fish's body, is altogether another thing. Beyond this an accurate estimate of the elasticity of the line, etc., should be possessed, and the striking motion accelerated or modified accordingly.\* The action requisite is a short, quick, wrist-motion, commenced sharply, but ended almost instantly and abruptly, like a quick movement of the hand in bringing a foil in fencing from tierce to carte. The hand holding the rod is turned upwards and backwards, whilst the arm is stationary when a short line is out, the movement being lengthened when the intervening line is either long or loose. One of the greatest charms of fly-fishing lies undoubtedly in the comparative absence of routine and sameness. The plier of the rod must adapt himself to ever-changing circumstances. It is a curious thing, and one that we have often been puzzled to account for satisfactorily, that it so frequently happens that precisely as the first trout is hooked, so are all subsequent captures throughout the day.

This fact first forcibly impressed us many years since. We were fishing in company with Mr. Ramsbottom, of Clitheroe, Lancashire, who wished to try salmon roe, † as a bait for trout upon the Dove, suitable tackle for which had been baited by our friend for our personal use, we being then uninitiated in the mystic "roe" fishing. Before rod No. 2 was equipped for action we had hooked a fish, which was ultimately landed. The hook proved to be imbedded in the tongue, a somewhat unusual thing,

---

\* The author, to my surprise, fails to note the relative merits of rods in this question of when to strike, viz: a "whippy" rod, which is slow in action, and a stiff, though pliant, rod which responds quickly to the wrist-turn.

† The use of roe for bait is now prohibited by the law of the realm.

as we then remarked. "Every fish we take this day will be hooked similarly," coolly prognosticated our friend. At the time we confess to having been rather sceptical as to the likelihood of this proving accurate, but the result verified the prediction, for every fish that fell to our steel upon that occasion was firmly hooked in the tongue. Had the hold of the hook been slight in the first instance, say near the external bordering of the mouth, we were assured that our take would have been diminished, as this would have indicated that the fish were not in a feeding mood, and would therefore close upon the bait in a faint-hearted manner. The same is exemplified in fly-fishing, though perhaps not in a degree so conspicuously marked. The first fish indicates, as a rule, the temporary state of the whole of his fellows, whether hunger-bitten or eager, or fastidious and indifferent.

In striking a grayling, it behooves the rodster to be extremely careful, as not only is the fish excessively delicate and tender-skinned about the mouth, but the tackle, being finer, is less calculated to sustain any sudden wrench. This is not the case with larger quarry; a few weeks', or even days' lake trouting, will put out the hand for fine grayling fishing for some length of time. What we have always found a safe antidote in these cases is to carefully keep a taut line, and immediately a fish rises to give a forward motion of the rod a foot or so. The downward action of the line thus eased, has the effect of sending in the little delicate hook without the most remote chance of danger. This may appear incredible in theory, but we can answer for its efficiency in practice. In rapid stream fishing a modification of the usual twist of the wrist may be given in the case of the grayling, where rapidity is the essential point; the twist here referred to should describe a downward direction, as when this is done the first action of the rod tip is directly



FIG. 1  
LITTLE PALE BLUE



FIG. 6  
NEEDLE FLY

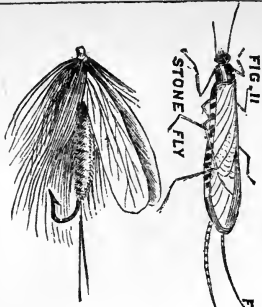


FIG. 11  
STONE FLY



FIG. 2  
IRON BLUE DUN



FIG. 7  
RED FLY

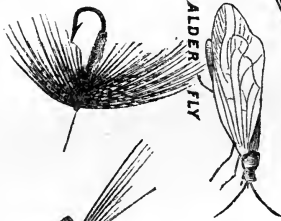


FIG. 12  
ALDER FLY

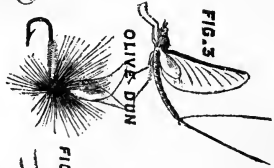
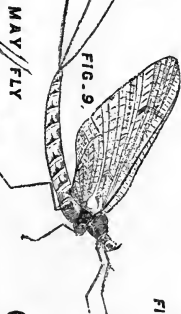
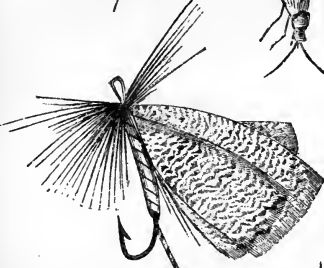


FIG. 3  
OLIVE DUN



FIG. 8  
COW BUNG FLY



MAY FLY



FIG. 4  
RED SPINNER



FIG. 5



FIG. 15  
POSTER'S INTERMEDIATE



FIG. 10  
HOUSE FLY

MARCH BROWN





upwards and opposite. The extent of the momentum ranges according to the pliability of the rod.

PLAYING A FISH comes next in order. The instant a fish is hooked the rod should be mounted at a proper angle, so as to feel the fish. The tactics to be employed vary in accordance with the lay of the water, as also with the conduct of the fish hooked, as when he descends immediately upon being struck, pulling heavily in the deep water, fighting hard for his hold, or neighboring shelter, it may be certainly inferred that he is safely hooked; but when he exhibits a tendency to fight it out near the surface, occasionally attempting to clear the water altogether, he is, as a general rule, but lightly hooked, and if not carefully handled, will to a certainty be lost. The proper method of playing a fish in open water that is clear from weeds, sticks, etc., is to give him plenty of line, and play him until he is completely exhausted, cautiously keeping the rod on a regular bend; but in rapid and turbulent rivers playing a fish is certain to end, not only in the loss of the fish, but also of a portion of your tackle.

There are scarcely any rivers free from portions of trees lying concealed in the deep waters, the small holes being well stocked with branches. In the shallow waters there are plenty of piles placed regularly a few yards apart, which are generally laid to prevent depredations by nets, and are seldom unfurnished with branches of trees, etc. When a fish is surprised by being hooked, his first movement is to dart upon the most convenient stick or pile, and with the rapidity of thought, entwine your tackle two or three times round it; then he makes good his escape. If he darts into a bed of weeds he stays there, and the line is hopelessly entwined, and you are left to liberate it as you may. Notwithstanding these obstructions, the experienced fly-fisher seldom loses a single fish in the course of a day or two's fishing, though the gut tackle he uses is as fine as possible. When a fish is

hooked in a stream, a moderate heavy bend should be immediately put upon the rod, the rodster keeping opposite his prey whenever the bank admits of it, and where this is impracticable line should be given and taken as occasion requires, and circumstances dictate. When the tackle is light and fine, and the quarry large, we commonly resort to this expedient, which seldom indeed fails. We suddenly stay all show of opposition and head the fish rather than otherwise a little in the direction he makes for so desperately. In open water, where this is more practicable, ninety-nine times out of a hundred he becomes utterly confounded at the sudden change, and will make a faint effort at a new departure in a side direction and widely different angle, but quickly shows broadside, and yields. This may appear incredible in theory; we are, however, speaking from our own experience, and can vouch for its practical result. Whenever a fish is safely hooked it is, as a rule, the fisher's own fault if he be ultimately lost. Personally, we never pass a feeding fish because of his locating in what is usually deemed an "awkward spot." "What's the use of trying for that fish?" queries a passing rodster. "It would be impossible to land him were you to get hold."

It has always been our policy to get hold first, as a preliminary ceremony, which done, the landing question is an after consideration. The notion of the main mass of anglers would appear to be, that if an unusually cunning fish takes up an impregnable looking position he is to be religiously left unassailed. "Breakers ahead" seem to be scented by the over-cautious pliers of the rod, when the chances of conquest are really "as even" as in less dangerous localities; and even supposing this were not so, the greater the difficulty the more exciting the sport, and the keener the pleasure. There is no necessity for lugging out instanter a hooked fish. In these circumstances a short line and a sturdy pliant rod will avert

endless disaster, and by holding on like grim death at one end of the line, whilst the terrified fish holds on in a similar style at the other, the very largest and heaviest fish are to be generally exhausted, and that with small risk of failure.

Amongst the precepts to be impressed upon the mind of the novice are the following: Never play a fish against a stream,\* as by that means an additional weight is thrown upon the line and tackle, which in all cases is particularly undesirable, as in the event of the tackle holding to its tether, there is danger of the fish being forcibly torn away from the hook. A small fish drawn against the stream, strains the tackle inconceivably. Whenever a fish makes for weeds, roots, or submerged timber at the rodster's side of the river, do not potter with the reel, but haul in the line by the left hand, allowing it to fall at the feet.† The height of absurdity to the mind of the writer is the sight of a stalwart fisherman comfortably winding away at the miniature windlass, in an endeavor to hoist a hooked fish that has secreted himself amongst roots, sunken sticks, piles, or other mischief, as though, seeing he had been observed to go in, there was not the least ground for doubts as to his being speedily got out again. Wherever weeds are most prevalent in a trout stream, there the best fish congregate. Like pike, they love to secrete themselves in the green shades of aquatic vegetation, from whence they can dart upon their unexpecting prey. Whenever surface food is sufficiently tempting, they leave their cover, generally rising upon the less frequented side of the water, where they have still the full benefit of the weed beds which intervene between them and their would-be

---

\* Most excellent advice, but difficult to follow, when fishing down stream.

† The author refers to bank fishing with stalwart tackle.

captors. It is often most tantalizing to lose one fish after another in a vain attempt to keep them from their weedy retreat; the position of this between the rodster and their fish, coupled with the circumstance of a long line being necessary to reach the rising fish, gives the latter every chance of escape, which, in fact, amply accounts for the presence of the best and finest fish in such quarters. In these cases an exceptional course of procedure may without complication be resorted to.

Immediately a fish is hooked, line and rod must be held in readiness for the first dash of the fish to the weeds. The interval, as a rule, is not long, as the moment they feel the hook's points, and recover from their consternation, instinct prompts them to make for the friendly shelter of the weeds, which, if entered, the chances are the fisher loses both fish and flies, with a portion of gut lash to boot. To avert this the line must be hauled in as rapidly as possible by the left and disengaged hand, whilst the rod's point must be brought back at right angles from the water, should the fish permit it. As a general rule, upon all moderately large streams these combined tactics have the effect of bringing up the fish, before the right angle is described, as in the case of a rod twelve feet long for example, the line is shortened by twenty-four feet. When the head of the fish is thus brought to the surface he must be assiduously held there, line being gradually and carefully taken in as he flounders over the weed beds. A freshly hooked fish will be found to force a passage by the stern or tail action, when firmly held by the head, infinitely better than the rodster unaided, in the case of an exhausted fish, could do it for him.

We well recollect once fishing upon the Wye (Derbyshire), at Bakewell, when the main incident of the day had a direct bearing upon the subject now before us, and may serve as an illustration of what we have endeavored

to point out. It was about the middle of April, the morning clear and keen, the night preceding had been dry and frosty. Before noon myriads of flies were out, whirling in ceaseless activity in the warm rays of the sun. We had been casting in a pre-occupied sort of way up to this time, occasionally creeling a small fish, and now and then imparting some little practical hint to a companion under our tuition. Now that the flies were numerous, the fish turned out to feed, and our lethargy was shaken off in the anticipation of a consequent change. During the half hour ensuing, we had experienced exceptionally good sport, and whilst thus busily engaged the old keeper came down stream, opened conversation upon fish, fishing, etc., and seemed in no hurry to deprive us of the benefit of his attendance.

“Where does the best of your fish lie, keeper?” we inquired after a time.

“Oh, up by the bridge yonder, there’s as nice a lot o’ fish there as anywhere i’ th’ river.”

“How far is it up stream from here?” queries our companion.

“Better than two miles, sir; you can do it in twenty minutes or thereabouts.”

Having no special desire to test the accuracy of this statement, we ultimately agreed to fish up. After the lapse of about an hour or so, we arrived upon the spot indicated, in company with the keeper. Here, for about a stone’s throw from the bridge, were dense masses of weeds, through which the water passed in narrow channels. The position was not favorable, there being in the immediate background a display of evergreen shrubs, etc., which looked ill for the safety of the tackle. “Well, here we are at last,” exclaims our pupil.

“Yes, gentlemen,” put in the old man, “there’s any amount o’ fish in, but plague take um, nobody can get um out; the best fisherman we have canner manage um.”

“Ah! how do you account for that?” we inquired.

“Oh, them weeds bother um; they loses the fish and tackle an’ all;” and after delivering himself of this gratifying reflection, the old keeper calmly inserted his pipe between his teeth, and his hands in the pockets of his breeches, as a preliminary to seeing the fun. At the second or third cast we hooked a fish, and by a strict and prompt application of the tactics previously described, the fish wriggled through the breakers in a style thoroughly earnest and effective. Once clear of the weeds we relaxed the pressure upon the rod, playing the fish at the extremity of a short line until exhausted.

“You’ve been very lucky with this un, sir.”

“We shall be equally as lucky you will find with the next,” was our reply. At the very next cast the game was repeated, with the same result, nor did we desist until we had sufficiently punished the cunning old fox, by an extract sufficient to cram both creels with the lazy monsters, whose presence near the bridge we knew to be the keeper’s pride.

LANDING.—In trout fishing the landing-net should invariably be included in the necessary apparatus.\* The tackle is never constructed with a view to extract fish bodily out of their element, moreover it is anything but

---

\* This matter of landing-nets recalls to mind a novel accident when fishing some years ago on Tim Grey’s Run in Lycoming Co., Pa. After walking some miles up the run, which at the time was very full and rapid, I entered the stream to find, on killing my first fish, that my landing-net was missing. Like all other earnest trouters I was not dismayed, and soon improvised a net out of my rather stiff-brimmed fishing hat. How awkwardly I used it must be blushinglly untold, but the last fish, a good stout fellow with muscles of iron, that it was used upon, gave a flirt out of it, and at the same moment an extra whirl of the down pouring waters flirted the improvised net out of my hand, and from that hour I have never seen my Derby. It went spinning and dipping down the stream which was bank high and in full vigor of current. I continued to fish, hatless, for hours, landing my victims on the shore whenever an apt spot appeared.

sportsman-like to attempt it. When it is desired to net a fish, the usual rule is to head the capture to the nearest available place if it should be impracticable where hooked; and in all cases the net should be the medium by which the quarry is conveyed to land. It may appear a very simple matter to the unpractical mind to net an already hooked fish, but anglers of experience know well, too well, perhaps, that indiscretion and undue haste in landing, or even presenting the net to a supposed exhausted fish will cause him to make yet another plunge, when least expected, for life and liberty. We always use the net with our disengaged hand, holding it edgewise, partly to enter the water readily, so as to get beneath the fish, and partly to meet the fish, which is so brought round as to enter the net forcibly. Bungling aid we have always found worse than no assistance; and when the practice of netting one's own fish is acquired we feel sure anglers generally will find it much more advantageous and satisfactory. Nothing is more common than for an awkward servant or attendant to hit the quarry by poking at him with the sharp rim of the net, instead of placing it under as he is brought near, thus knocking the fish off the hook, if not otherwise breaking the tackle. Who has not some painful remembrance of some deplorable loss of this kind? For our own part we have had quite sufficient lessons, not in trout alone, but in salmon and pike-fishing, to cause us to refrain from trusting our net to any individual not thoroughly acquainted with the use and handling of it.

Grayling especially require delicate handling when about to be netted, for should the rod be unconsciously elevated, so as to cause the weight of the fish to rest upon the hook and tackle, the fish is in great danger of being lost by the hook breaking away under the strain. Fish should not be pulled even in part out of the water whilst the net is placed under them, as this always causes danger

of breakage, from the cause stated. The tail end of the fish, particularly of a large one, is to be inserted first in the net, except in special cases, as when for instance, the quarry heads close by the rodster, up or down stream, when the net may be used as a receptacle for him to head into, when within reach.

The best times to fish, the seasonable flies and other information for the fly-fisher, we give in the Monthly Notes. We now purpose dealing more generally with the subject of fly-fishing in its various bearings. Fishing in rapid streams requires tactics somewhat different from those suitable for ordinary smooth running river, or still-water fishing. In these no humoring actions are required to be given to the fly. To draw against or even across stream in these circumstances is to extend to it an unnatural motion. The flies must be cast a few feet above the dimply indication of a rise, and then allowed to float over. This may be repeated several times before moving on, especially if casting over grayling, as these fish are given to take the proffered lure more often than not when passed over repeatedly. With regard to the vexed question of up or down-stream fishing, no strict rule need be observed; a continuous resort to either is not desirable. Adherents of the one deprecate the ever-recurring nuisance of the line becoming slack when cast up stream by the downward flow of water, thus lessening, after each delivery, the chances of a rise by the fly being brought again home to the feet. Upon the other side of the question we have arguments in plenty against down-stream fishing, the most important being the habitual position of the fish heading up-stream, and therefore in full ken of the operations instigated for his allurements.\*

Our method of fishing a strange stream is, after pros-

---

\*The proportion of "down stream" to "up stream" fishers in American waters is probably one-hundred to one.



pecting the length to be operated upon the night or early morn previous, to commence at its lower end, and casting, as we have attempted to describe previously, according to the lay of the land and water and general surroundings, now across, or slanting upward, and occasionally, though rarely, downwards. Where a continuous succession of stream and pool are met with, each should be well and carefully fished. One of the best and most killing styles of still-water fishing with the fly is the sunk-fly system. This consists in drowning the flies, so to speak, so that they will readily, though gradually descend, and working them very gently by a very minute movement of the rod tip. The very finest gut line is essential for the successful practice of this mode. The same method may be applied to the deep slower running streams, with deadly effect, when the fish refuse to rise to the surface. The dry-fly system is, however, by far the most scientific and artistic way of alluring either trout or grayling, and well fished streams will yield more and heavier dishes of those fish to it than to any method or system of angling whatever. At twilight, and in the "gloaming" of evening, as also in night fishing, it is advisable to cast across and rather down-stream, as the line cannot be kept so well under hand, the command over it being less according to the density of the gathering gloom. Sometimes the sunk-fly method is to be applied to the sharp running streams with signal success, as may also the dry-fly style to the quieter stills and pools. A change in this respect often proves advantageous, even upon well whipped waters, the educated inhabitants of which so soon fight shy of the persistently applied lures. Whenever one side of a river or stream is habitually well-lined with fishermen, the fish generally rise for the most part close to the opposite bank, in most cases close to the edge of the water. The plan to practice in these circumstances is to cast directly out upon the opposite bank, and allow the end to drop in

a casual sort of way into the water, where it is generally seized instantly.

Fly-fishing for grayling and trout are not altogether identical, as we have elsewhere shown. Both fish are frequently found, however, in the same water, and are to be taken with the same cast of flies. Finer tackle, as a rule, is required in the case of the former, as also smaller and brighter flies. In most trout streams of note grayling are found in profusion in their lower portion, where the water flows more serenely. Here they locate near the bottom, even when surface feeding; therefore, if the dry floating-fly is preferable in the case of the trout, it is doubly so in that of the grayling, which, though perhaps more expert as a fly-catcher habitually, rises a much greater distance to absorb it. We contend, therefore, that in the surface cast and draw method, the fish is scarcely allowed a chance to get within seizing distance. This once prevailing practice of trailing along the cast is now being discarded, and deservedly so. How it should have so long held sway we never could conceive. That fish are occasionally taken by it we know, and that they are more often abashed by it, we understand as being a perfectly rational result; but how the fisherman who trails his lines across, or slantways over a stream, at so rapid a pace as to leave a trail similar to that of a passing rat or water-hen, can imagine he is extending to the flies a natural and seductive action, we confess is entirely beyond us. The whole of the land-flies appear naturally out of their element upon the water, and are at the mercy of wind and wave, especially upon broken water; upon the stills they certainly have a little more power, so as to enable them to essay a paddling excursion with a view to escape impending perils; but even here, either the floating, or the sunk, or drowned fly is found preferable to the insane system of trailing. The native water insects, as every fly-fisher worthy of the name knows, are quite

“at home” upon the element, floating down stream with their wings erect in the case of the ephemerals, like the minute craft upon a marine engraving. To meet the case of the fluttering land-flies, wingless or buzzy artificials answer amply. With the duns the wings must be both full and erect, or “cock-up” as it is sometimes designated, so as to admit of the fly being kept comparatively dry for some little time, when, becoming saturated, a few backward and forward whisks of the line and rod should be given before the delivery of the cast again. This is repeated whenever the flies become saturated, as by so doing the trouble of repeatedly changing the lure is greatly lessened.

Fly-fishing in brooks is practised much the same as in large and more open waters. Where the banks of narrow water are clear of encumbrances, the rodster should fish some distance away, so as to avoid needlessly exposing the person and purpose. The flies for brooks and tributaries of good “trouting” streams should be somewhat larger than those used for the main streams, to enable the fisherman to land his prey safely and quickly, as, where the water is turbulent and confined, the fish have greater chances of breaking away. Often the least leniency will be rewarded by an entanglement with sticks or roots of trees; playing in these circumstances is, therefore, not to be considered for an instant. The flies here alluded to are suitable for discolored waters generally, the hook, hackle, and wing being somewhat larger to withstand rough usage. The same order of land and water insects appear upon all running waters containing trout or grayling, no matter where situated; nevertheless, some anglers will persist in presenting upon all and every occasion, a wonderful fly or two which is said to kill upon that river only. For our part, we may state, that we never make any distinction in our list of flies, no matter what river we may cast over. We have often heard the phrase

“Your flies are too large for this water,” or—“Your flies are too small to kill here, sir.” Upon some Welsh and Scottish streams, the fly-fishers use unduly large flies, whilst upon clear spring waters, the local flies are excessively small, and in this case invariably hackled. Both large and small flies are objectionable when they do not correspond with the “naturals” frequenting the water. We can testify from our own experience, that the flies, irrespective of locality, are the same as regards size upon every river in England, Wales, or Scotland; even those upon mountain lakes, situated in some cases at great elevation, are similar, in their season, both as regards size and color, to those upon low-lying rivers.

Fancy flies, when used judiciously at the right time, may answer just as well for trout, and especially for grayling, as they do for salmon; indeed, the two last-named, have many characteristics in common; both display an effeminate appreciation of gaudy glitter and happy combination of colors, whilst the more circumspect and subtle trout often ignores the unnatural “artificials,” though presented temptingly. The most important of nondescript “artificials” are, beyond doubt, the bumble tribes. These in their various shades seldom fail to kill, when no rising of naturals has occurred during the day, or when there is a miscellaneous host of “oddlings” about the water, under which latter circumstances the palmered “artificials” are undoubtedly taken for some one of the flies about. Another useful “child of fancy” is the flat gold-bodied whistler fly. This is hackled with red-brown pigeon’s breast feather, or with that of the whistling plover, from which it takes its name. This fly is really valuable for discolored, and even thick rising water. Many are the times we have, instead of leaving the rapidly-rising river in disgust, killed a good dish of fish through its sole agency. Upon the Wharfe, upon a late occasion, we took trout sufficient to fill our creel some

five times, had they been all retained, whilst several anglers who had repaired to the same length returned to the hotel, under the impression that the water was too thick for the worm.

When the fish are basking, during the mid-day hours in the hot summer months, they are not always to be drawn to the surface by small flies. The red caterpillar, elsewhere described, we believe to be unsurpassed for trout and large grayling at mid-day; and when cast as a night-fly in the "gloaming" of evening. Browns and gaudily-dressed lake flies, too, when cast and played like a minnow, just below the surface of the water, are good. But the combination more suitable for this method is the dressing known as the "Alexandra fly." This is as large as a full-sized Sewin fly, the hook employed being a Limerick, the shank carefully wrapped with broad silver tinsel, to represent the body; the wings, if any, consist of a dozen strands or so of brown turkey feather; hackles, blue feathers from the peacock's neck. This fly was originally introduced by Dr. Hobbs, some fifteen years ago. Upon well-wooded, swift-running waters it is most useful; the line is allowed to run out with the current, being then drawn back up-stream by a series of short jerks that serve to open and shut the fibres of the hackle, thus exposing the white body only at intervals, at measured distances. It is surprising how the fish will follow and take this fly when in the "running" mood.\* It is, most certainly, far superior to the minnow, from the fly-fisher's point of view.

In angling there are various influences that affect the fish, and which are as yet but little understood. Not only are their habits and movements most important to the angler, but, for the better pursuit of sport, meteorological changes and influences should also be noted by the

---

\* They doubtless mistake it for a big bug making frantic efforts to leave the water.

observant student. To some it is not known that the temperature of the water is most frequently responsible for bad "taking" days; we habitually carry a small instrument, by no means generally used by fishermen, we refer to a small pocket thermometer. This proves most useful in ascertaining the temperature of the water, either at the surface or at the bottom. By the use of such an instrument the observant angler soon learns that when the water is of unusually low temperature, the moving fish will be rare, notwithstanding the favorable atmospheric temperature. When the air is cold and the water proves at a higher degree than common, the fish will be certain to be more or less on the feed; but when both atmosphere and water are genial, every description of fish will be found to be upon the "forage" for prey, if not satiated by some proper food supply. The observant fisherman upon any particular water soon finds out much more to guide him in his choice of fishing. The water of different rivers and streams, as a matter of course, varies, and the fisher in any particular water should ascertain precisely, not only the prevailing temperature of the water, but that in which the fish feed most eagerly, as also when it is useless trying to tempt them to "rise" or "run." The old nostrums anent weather wisdom are mainly inaccuracies. In the coldest eastern or north-eastern wind we have killed repeatedly many a fine basket of fish, owing to the temperature of the water being high and unusually genial from some cause or other.

The ancient belief in the stoppage of sport during a thunder-storm is not strictly true. Some little time before the breaking of the storm atmospheric influence appears to act detrimentally, almost invariably through the warmer months, but during the storm itself the fish will rise more often than not, most eagerly at the numerous insects drowned during the down-pour, and this too, whilst the electric fluid gleams and the thunder roars

immediately overhead, all without visible effect upon the fish. As regards the fisherman we fear the same observations do not apply with equal truth. The nearest sycamore tree or honeysuckle hedge is sought, and the angler is seldom to be convinced, save by practical arguments, that the time for taking fish is while the rain falls, just as the time for making hay is while the sun shines, as the old adage has it.

Between the tyro and the proficient grayling fisher there exists a wider gulf than is the case with the experienced and inexperienced in any other branch in the whole art of fishing. Practical skill and general artistic bearing are more fully exemplified in fishing for grayling, than for trout and salmon, whilst upon the same ground the unskilled efforts of the bungler stand at a yet more glaring contrast. Mark the long sweeping casts of the adept across and up-stream, ever true to the circulating eddy, the centre of which forms the "bull's-eye" at which to aim. See the gradually whirled line, how lightly and efficiently it is cast, the obstructive force of the air and the flowing water being all taken into consideration when that measured swing is given. Observe the varying tactics resorted to when called for in varying circumstances, and yet above all the efficient mode of handling the hooked fish while it makes determined efforts to free itself from the tiny thread so recently ignored, and to avoid the necessity of a premature move to other parts of the stream through undue disturbance of the water. Upon the other hand the inexperienced grayling fisher's awkwardly managed line is planted splashingly upon the bosom of some tranquil pool or still deep—the collar, dancing and dangling in its aerial flight, becoming hopelessly entangled (as it inevitably must) the instant it nears the water, and causing a break larger than the bold rise of a heavy fish. All these signs make the presence of their owner known and appreci-

ated, both upon the banks and beneath the surface of the water.

Fly-fishing at twilight and afterwards is prohibited, and justly so, in some districts. The deadly nature of the practice presents no recommendations to the true sportsman; nevertheless, where the water is over-run with excessively large fish, whose acquired wariness prohibits them from surface feeding during the day, they may with perfect honesty of purpose be legitimately extracted at such times as they may deign to dine. The cast for night fishing should not exceed two yards, the gut being of medium thickness, though round and without flaw or blemish. One fly is ample to fish with, though upon a moonlight night, the usual trio may be used with the three-yards lash. When the evening shades gather and deepen, the fish will be found to rise more upon the verge of the shadow thrown upon the water by high banks, or foliage situate near. We do not commend the use of salmon casts and swivelled monster moths, etc. This may be all very well in peculiar surroundings, when the night is densely dark and the water well lined with sticks and piles, but under these circumstances we must confess to seeing sport only in name. In point of sport and true diversion, there is certainly more in the gloaming of evening when the moonbeams "silver the landscape o'er," rendering the surrounding objects almost as bright as when under the orb of day. Then may the fly-fisher consciently ply his art upon fair vantage ground and with a clear conscience.

The flies to be used are the largest and heaviest of the day flies, such as the large browns, cinnamon, and stone flies. The first-named form admirable copies of the small grass moths, so prevalent late in the summer's evening. The usual night lures, such as the large moths of the customary shades, the coachman and the caterpillar, may be used with success in the way alluded to.



With regard to the best size of moths to use, we do not advise them to be too heavy. It has become the practice recently upon some waters to use lures well-nigh as weighty as the American half-ounce.\* The size should average that of a live May-fly. An artificial dressed by us to imitate the fluttering action of the moth when upon the water, is much used in the Midlands, since its recent introduction—we refer to the “Dun Cut.” This dressing has proved itself to more than equal the usual reproductions of the moths. It is a double-hackled artificial, the feathers being dun and brown hen’s breast feathers (usually used for wings), the outside feather being dun; body, drab fur ribbed with silver twist; hook, long shanked Limerick or Kendal—May-fly size.

Before the subject of trout and grayling fishing (which has been dealt with more in detail elsewhere) is concluded, we feel it incumbent upon us to make some allusion to the Dove, upon whose banks resided the first writer upon this, the highest branch of the art piscatorial, in our land. This is classic ground to every follower of Walton. Here have assembled all noted fishermen since the days in which the common sire of us all trod its banks and wielded the rod; and they still come, though many a famous rod that was wont to whip these waters is laid away for ever. Every rock and pool seems to embue one with

“Meek Walton’s heavenly memory.”

The ancient and original fishing-house, too, standing as it does, scarcely impaired by the ravages of time, seems to impress the mind with familiar associations. It requires no great stretch of imagination to call up the venerable and benevolent features and stalwart form of the “Modern Patriarch Izaak,” and his adopted son,

---

\* The author doubtless alludes to the large black bass flies sold in America, which are certainly heavy enough to kill a bass, if they should happen to strike it in or out of the water.

discoursing pleasantly whilst making flies, or rigging up the tackle for the evening's rise.

“Cheerful, sage, and mild,  
Walton's discourse was like the honey balm,  
Distilled along these waters wild.  
Smit with the love of angling he beguiled,  
With his adopted son the hours away,  
Whilst Cotton owned the fondness of a child  
For him, in whose glad company to stay,  
Had made the whole year pass like one sweet month of May.”

Yes, the structure and general appurtenances are still the same; time has dealt most kindly with the building; over the portal the immortal inscription, “*Piscatoribus Sacrum*,” remains still unobliterated; every disciple of the rod may with veneration read

“His title clear to enter here.”

The Dove is noted for its blue transparency, hence the name. Centuries since other waters were polluted in comparison with the crystal stream of the Dove. The renowned Cotton, the Minstrel of the Vale, thus sweetly sings—

“Such streams Rome's Yellow Tiber cannot show;  
The Herian Tagus, or Ligurian Po,  
The Maese, the Danube, and the Rhine,  
Are puddle-water all compared to thine;  
And Loire's pure streams yet too polluted are  
With thine much purer to compare;  
The rapid Garonne and the winding Seine,  
Are both too mean,  
Beloved Dove, with thee  
To vie priority;  
Tame and Isis, when conjoined submit,  
And lay their trophies at thy silver feet.”

About Beresford, the scenery through which the stream flows resembles much that of Dove-dale; Beresford-dale being a sort of miniature representation of it. In the first-named, the volume of water is, of course, greater, it being situate several miles lower-down stream. Trout and grayling are the only fish here found, with

the exception of a few eels. The trout predominate largely from Dove-dale up-stream; here the best efforts of the rodster are to be brought into play in order to achieve even moderate successs. The water contains a fair stock of fish, but for education and attainments, Dove trout, and especially Dove-dale trout, vie successfully with those of the Wandle, Hitchen, Test, or any other stream wherever situate; and the adept upon the Dove may, with perfect safety, consider himself sufficiently accomplished to rank amongst the first fly-fishers of his day.

“Oh, Dove, thou art so clear, so bright and sweet,  
 Men’s choicest lures with scant approval meet ;  
 Did not the beauteous Dale such charms reveal,  
 The pilgrim rodster oft regret would feel.  
 Romantic vale, renowned for varied scene,  
 Sylvan abode, meet for a fairy queen ;  
 Rare gems of nature deck the scenes around,  
 With wooded heights the lofty rocks are crowned ;  
 Cascades impetuous fall with arrow flight ;  
 Rainbows presented glisten in the light ;  
 The waters, purling at the angler’s feet,  
 In crystal streams and sparkling eddies meet.  
 Soft strains of music borne upon the breeze,  
 Resound from warbling choirs, amidst the trees.  
 Fair scenes, adieu. Alas ! charmed stream, farewell,  
 Where speckled trout and grayling dwell.”

W. S.

## CHAPTER XIII.

## LIVE FLY AND BEETLE FISHING.

Dibbing or daping with the natural fly is an easy art, and is, moreover, a very productive and, we may add, a very seductive one, when reasonably practised upon a densely wooded stream. It is often useful as a means of weeding out old fish, whose cannibal propensities go far to exterminate their own species, as well as their immediate neighbors and relatives. There is small scope for skill in the use of the live fly, as employed under the above circumstances, as the foliage lining the banks shields the rodster's person from view, whilst the struggling lure accomplishes the rest. The rod and line must necessarily be both short and stout for the general comfort of fishing. An ordinary fly rod with short top answers admirably for the purpose, whilst the three or four feet of gut bottom line should be strong, round, and clear, without a faulty place or blemish. Deplorable loss often ensues from carelessness in looking over the tackle before commencing operations. It needs ever to be remembered that the weakest place in a line, be it of what substance it may, decides its precise degree of strength throughout, as when the testing time arrives, the thing breaks at that point, despite its strength elsewhere. A flat or unduly thin place in gut should always be taken out before loss and damage are experienced from its presence.

The systems of using the natural fly for the allurements of fish, in use at the present day, are three in number, which may be described as follows—1st. Throwing or casting in open water; 2d. Midwater fishing, or daping with the sunken fly; 3d. Surface fishing and dibbing. The first enumerated is fully dealt with in the Monthly

Notes. The method of procedure to be adopted in the case of the sunken fly varies but little from that of worm fishing without a float. The fly is attached to the hook between the wings, the bend of the hook to project towards the tail, and two small shots are fixed a foot or so above the hook. Thus equipped the angler carefully introduces the lure to the notice of the fish which lurk under roots or projecting banks, etc., always endeavoring to keep an eye upon the bait, as the moment to strike is when the fish has closed upon it, and leisurely turns away. By the moment's grace thus given, the rodster is enabled to hook his quarry in the corner of the mouth, which is always a desideratum in the case of large fish, trout especially, their mouth being excessively hard, gristly, or bony. The movements of a large trout are always leisurely, and as the bait is genuine no fear need be entertained as to the possibility of his rejecting it, during the moment's respite given.

SURFACE DIBBING, as the name implies, consists in working in a natural way the live flies upon the top of the water. In order to do this effectually, the impaled fly is made to float and flutter by the action given to the line, occasionally settling upon the water for a brief interval. Just before twilight, on a summer's evening, this system of angling is very deadly, and more especially so on small brooks. Here the fish are then wide-awake, and upon the forage for moths, minnows, and other legitimate food which approaches within grabbing distance; and any other larger insects prevalent that may be placed before their notice are extremely likely to be absorbed. The large white grass moths are capital lures for this purpose. The flies most in repute for dapping and dibbing purposes, are the May fly, stone and cinnamon flies, the blue bottle, the alder and oak flies, as also the common house fly. The first of these is usually carried in a small basket, specially made for the purpose,

which is strung upon the creel strap. The remainder, being flat-winged flies, may be kept in a glass bottle, the cork having a small, gradually widening nick made in one side, to allow the passage of one fly only when partially drawn, as also to admit air. A fly will always frequent the opening, no matter how quickly he may be extracted. The size of the hook usually employed is a No. 7 Kendal, with shortened shank. Sometimes two flies are placed upon the hook at once, with the smaller of them next the point. This is often found to answer, as the hooks are more obscured and the bait more significant and tempting to a large fish. Always fish over the eddy of a rise, and whenever the bank of wood of any description admits, keep well back from the river side; even the still pools may be found productive. In this case the nearest bank must be fished first, afterwards the middle and opposite side, and then the open water. The instant the fish rises at your fly you must strike as in artificial fly fishing, and play as is usual in that branch of the art. For this open dibbing, a full length of fly cast is necessary, and that too of fine substance. The artistic method of fly fishing with the blow-line, as referred to in the Notes on the Months, is much practised in Scotland and Ireland, upon the lochs containing trout, more especially when the May fly is up.

Beetles of every kind form admirable baits for trout, as also for chub, and other fish. These are to be had "artificial," and when a maggot or wasp-grub is fixed upon the hook, they are found quite as killing as the "naturals." Cockchafers, cockroaches, and clockers are all deemed acceptable to the hungry fish, during the season of low waters and scant food.

When either dapping or dibbing, care should be taken to keep a taut and straight line, as intervening slack line renders it a moral impossibility to handle the bait and strike effectually, more especially when angling through

a small opening in the bushes bordering a brook. In small places, the small lady-cow (the fisherman's Marlow Buzz or Coch-y-bondu) is used as a live lure in fine water. These hardy little insects do not leave the hook so readily as the more slender and frail flies. A capital plan of using them is to fit up a fine four-yard gut collar, or lash, with four of the insects, three as droppers and one at the point, the former being attached to fine gut hooks (No. 8 or 9 Kendal), when they may be cast as "artificial" when trout are shy; and when there is a scarcity of ephemeral and other water order of flies this method often proves extremely killing.

---

## CHAPTER XIV.

### NOTES ON THE MONTHS FOR FLY-FISHING.\*

#### FEBRUARY. †

The angler, as a rule, commences to angle for trout and grayling upon St. David's Day, the first of March, when, according to the calendar, "fly-fishing begins;"

---

\* This chapter is the longest and one of the most interesting in the book; the reader will note, however, that for fishing on our native streams, but few, if any anglers subdivide their stock of flies into the so-called killing lures for each month of the season. Dark small flies for bright days, pellucid or shallow waters—bright big flies for dark days, deep or discolored waters—appear to answer the needs of the angler, and the erratic fancies of his quarry. A dozen or so of standard flies of approved qualities amply "fills the bill." The question of color, form, size, and number, will always be an open one, and withal a delightful theme of discussion among the enthusiasts of the art; albeit, it should be remembered that "uncle" Thad. Norris, the father of American angling, pinned his faith to a few chosen feathers; using, of the winged flies, only the Brown Hen and the Coachman, and of the hackles, only a brown, a black, and a ginger.

† It will be noted that the season for trout commences in British waters two months earlier than with us.

but we would recommend the tyro to try his hand about the middle of February, when he will be sure to effect captures that will give him a relish to follow the pursuit, and exhilarate him to become an adept in the "flying" art. We note that the majority of youthful beginners take their trial trip in July or August, flogging assiduously when the sun shines powerfully, and leaving dispirited with their ill-success, just as the fish begin to feed at sunset. The angler should be at the water-side from eleven to three o'clock—it is little use starting earlier, as the fish do not rise freely except in the middle of the day. Slow-running streams and still deeps are the most likely places on which to cast. We recommend the red fly, the blue dun, or February flapper, and the ordinary rough bumble to make up the cast, as being the most likely trio for early spring-fishing. The last named is only a fancy fly, but is an excellent killer in spring and autumn. To the experienced fly-fisher, it is a well known fact that few flies rise to the surface of their liquid element while the river is impregnated with snow "broth." This cold stimulant is no inducement for the little insect to quit its sheath in the bed of the river, but when the genial influence exercised by the rays of the sun pierces into its retreat, then the small fly quits its abode, rises to the surface, spreads its wings, and commences life's voyage, which probably ere long is cut short by the appearance of the

"Pearl tipped snout  
Of the speckled trout."

The Red fly first makes its appearance in this month. Its wings and body are of an olive color, but after two or three sunny days its legs and body assume a russet-brown, and as the weather becomes warmer its color changes until it attains a deep ruddy hue. The prevailing shade in March and April of both legs and body resembles that of a coffee bean, though slightly claret-colored towards



the tail. The Red fly, we believe, is common to all waters containing trout or grayling. The Welsh anglers consider it one of the best flies that can be used, indeed, it is sometimes called the "Welsh fly." In some districts in this country its local appellation is "Old Joe," in others the "Early Spring Red," and the "Spring Brown," and another local name is the "March Brown." The Red fly's wings lie nearly flat on its back, the wings of the March Brown are almost upright, after the manner of the duns and other ephemerals. Many a neatly folded packet finds its way into our hands, containing naturals for identification, and as the March Brown proper, like the May fly, does not frequent all waters, this fly, acting in a manner as a substitute, causes endless misconceptions; and vast numbers of the Red fly come to hand which are invariably mistaken for the March Brown. The Blue Dun, or February Flapper, so-called because of its fluttering on the water more than any other dun, is of a smoky-blue hue all over, and when once seen can never be mistaken.

#### MARCH.

The angler should be at the water-side from eleven to four o'clock. The fish not yet having recovered their full vigor after the winter season, are to be found on the slow running streams and still deeps. The Red fly, Blue and Cockwinged Duns, Cowdung fly, and March Brown, are the most abundant flies on the water, and therefore are the best to be used. A description of the Red fly has been given under February. For particulars of the Blue and Cockwinged Duns, see page 130. The Cowdung fly is a common insect, the appearance of which is well known to all. It is in boisterous weather plentiful on the water. This is a land fly, and is found in profusion on rich meadow land where cows have been pastured. These insects rise from the earth with the first days of spring.

On cold windy days, or in a sharp wind succeeding a few hours of bright open weather, when the inclement season has terminated, these flies are carried by the wind upon the water, the surface of which being thus quickly besprinkled with struggling atoms of life, the attention of the hunger-bitten trout is speedily arrested, and under these circumstances they seldom fail to shake off their lethargy to feed freely upon them. It is the best fly that can be used early and late in the day through the whole of this month, and occasionally in April.

The March Brown is a general favorite with both fish and fishermen throughout Britain. In Wales it is termed the Cob fly. In the northern counties of England it is known as the brown or dun drake; but, though in different localities the name varies, the insect itself is characteristically the same everywhere. The wings are nearly erect, after the manner of all the duns, the color being a beautiful freckled brown, and the legs the same shade. The body varies, but is generally a decided rusty hue, with yellow ribs protruding, and it resembles the green drake or May fly more closely than any other species. It is two-thirds the size, and goes through similar changes. As the weather gets a little warmer these flies appear a shade smaller in size, and lighter in color. This is called the Turkey Brown, though exactly the same ephemeral. It is often erroneously supposed to be the female March Brown. This large brown, with its metamorphosis, the Great Red Spinner, lasts until May, and even June, and appears again in August, but smaller still in size. In the Scotch Highlands it is used as a general fly throughout the summer, and is a capital killer. Many a weighty pannier have we had the pleasure of creeling through its agency, for when once really well on the water, which it annually is on most streams, better sport is not afforded by any fly. The Great Red Spinner referred to is an elegant fly, and is sometimes a good killer, but as in this

stage it lays the eggs that propagate its species, like all the other spinners, it is scarcely more than a film or shell, after having fulfilled its natural functions, and it is no matter of surprise that the lusty fresh browns are more appreciated by the fish.

It is the last Sunday in March. Nature is again assuming her green garb, and the birds are joyously carolling their overflowing meed of earthly bliss at the return of ever welcome spring. Tempted by the promise thus held out of an enjoyable commune with nature, you, after the morning's devotions are over, indulge in a quiet stroll by the neighboring trout stream. After a time you observe what mayhap had previously escaped your notice, namely, that there is quite a number of up-winged "browns" about. You approach for a nearer inspection. A glance at the water proves the fish to be equally curious. Dexterously capturing a specimen in your hat, you pronounce it a March brown. The fish, too, seem to have made a similar discovery, as all the way down stream you are treated to a constant repetition of the sweetest sound in the whole range of music to the angler, "the plump little swish of a rising fish," and you console yourself with the reflection that, as the March brown is well on to-day there will be murder to-morrow. By ten the next morning you are therefore upon the scene of action. As the slanting rays of Old Sol penetrate the murky clouds the flies commence to rise from the bed of the river, sweeping in battalions up and down stream, or buoyantly breasting the miniature rippling waves. Having hastily put together your rod, and rigged up your cast with a trio of March browns, you approach the stream; first wetting your line by way of prelude, and carefully measuring your distance, you cast in the midst of the perpetuated eddies. "There!" you hook, almost at the same instant, two fish, one on the bob and the other on the stretcher, which immediately dash counter to each

other, smashing up your delicately fine cast. The lesson here experienced teaches that the extra-fine grayling lash of the previous autumn is not equally adapted for heavy trout. But lose no time. Quick! Look out something more substantial. Ah, to be sure! this looks more like it. Pull out the coils by drawing the gut slowly through your fingers. We must now "rig up" again with fairly substantial artificials; which done, we move on a little ahead. Now, very carefully by the foot of yonder old alder. There, splendid! You have him. Gently! Mind the weeds and hold the point of the rod well up. Be careful! He exhibits a strong desire to embrace that old stump. Ah! keep his head well up, and take in line with your left hand. Look out! There is some spurt in him still; show him due courtesy by paying away line with due reserve nevertheless. Now he wearies, and lies athwart the glistening surface of the water, as pretty a contrast to its silvery ripples as can well be imagined. Here we are at last, with a splended one-and-a-half pounder, which ultimately proves but a type of a dozen or more that grace our basket at sundown. The only rivers of the north that the March brown does not frequent are the Tay and Tweed. Upon every mountain burn and moorland stream this fly is a standard killer. The rough bumble is also an excellent lure.

#### APRIL.

This is the best month in the year for fly fishing. The proverbial showers which characterize the month have the double effect of drowning the flies, and stripping the water of its transparency; indeed, the more inclement the weather, the greater chance of sport. The flies are more sturdy than in the summer months, getting more delicate as the season advances.

The flies recommended for last month will be found equally serviceable in this, especially if the season is

rather backward, the weather retarding the progress of the little insects in proportion to its severity. There are the Yellow Dun of April (two shades), Pale Blue Dun, Red Spinner, Sand fly, Stone fly, and Foster's intermediate. The Iron Blue Dun comes on in this month, but is much more numerous in the next, for which see description. The Yellow Duns of April (two shades) and the Pale Blue Dun, being April specimens of the Olive Dun (ephemerals) are of great importance; indeed, I look upon this fly in its various stages as being the most useful to the angler through the whole season. This fly, after living three days, casts its coat, and then appears as the Red Spinner. These flies whirl in clouds a distance above the water, frequently alighting on the surface; every time they do so they deposit an egg, which, as we have observed elsewhere, produces duns of the olive family, ranging in shade from the blue dun to the pale evening white, according to the temperature of the water and weather, when the larva attains its maturity. The Red Spinner is a delicately transparent fly, the legs are fiery brown, the tail double the length of the dun's, the body a ruddy yellow. In consequence of the tails being long, it is necessary to put them on the artificials, though not requisite in the case of the duns. As the fish generally rise at the tail-end of the fly we have found it detrimental in hooking, especially when rabbit's whiskers are used, as is generally the case. When we do attach the tails, we use three fibres of a large cock's hackle. Towards evening is the best time to use these flies, as in the heat of the day they take refuge in the foliage of bushes and small trees on the banks of the stream, but at sunset appear in great numbers. The duns are principally used at mid-day, the light April Dun, and Pale Blue Dun on light genial days, the Dark April Dun on dull cloudy days. It may be as well to remark that, if the water be clear, with a bright sun, it will be useless to fish on

the still deeps and slow-running streams; but eddies, small holes, and rapid running streams, are the best places to fish. Should, however, a strong breeze disturb the surface of the water, the angler may pursue his sport on the smoother reaches. Foster's intermediate will be found very effective when duns are on the water. This is a copy of all the duns prior to their re-appearance as spinners. It is well known that fish invariably seize sickly or maimed insects, or small fry, etc., from the midst of their more lively companions. The Sand fly is the color of reddish sand; it is a flat-winged fly, and is very plentiful in this month and the next, and is a good killer when there is no quantity of any particular flies on the water.

The Stone fly is a flat-winged fly; the wings and body are of a dark stone color, the latter is strongly marked with yellow ribs; the legs are of a greenish brown, and these it uses with extreme activity. When not on the water it frequents stones and pebbles by the sides of streams, on the rapid parts of which the artificial should be used. Many fish are taken by dibbling with the natural fly near the roots of overhanging bushes. It resembles a beetle in its flight, falls very heavy on the water, and is a substantial bait for large fish. On some streams it is known as the May-fly, as the green drake does not appear on those waters. It is a water-fly, and lasts from the beginning of April to the middle of June.

The Grannum, or Green-tail, makes its appearance in this month. This is a flat-winged fly, of the size and shape of the Sand fly, with the addition of a green appendage at the end of the body, which is its egg-pouch. This fly is quite a favorite with fishermen in April, but we confess we have seldom done much with it until the latter part of summer.

## MAY.

At this season of the year the fish leave the deep water; and sport on small streams is now good. The best flies for this month are the Hare's Ear, Yellow Dun of May, Iron Blue, and its transformation the Jenny Spinner, the Alder fly, and the Yellow Sally. The Green Drake, or May fly, seldom appears on any stream before the last week in May or the beginning of June, under which month we give a descriptive account of the various methods of using it. The little Iron Blue will now be found very abundant upon most waters, especially in the Midland and Southern counties. Its local appellations are numerous, but being precisely the color of a piece of new iron, the very appropriate and descriptive term, Iron Blue, is more generally adopted. The fly appears a shade lighter upon the body in this month, a mauve color prevailing. This fly assumes no other name upon undergoing his change of color in the body, but is universally recognized as being one and the same fly. Were this the case with the larger species of duns, much complication would be avoided. To the entomological student, the habits of this little insect form an interesting and amusing study. It is extremely hardy, being a lover of inclement weather. Its water nympha frequents the cold spring heads during the whole summer, rising to the surface in clouds whenever the weather happens to be dull, with obscure sun. A cloudy morning will entice myriads from the watery depths, the fish being in turn allured from their accustomed haunts in the bed of the river to the surface of the water, where they regale themselves upon these prim little yacht-like insects. Great execution may often be effected through the medium of a good copy of this especial favorite of the fish, even in the hands of an indifferent rodster, though it is not to be inferred that any artificial, or even a bad rendering of the

Iron Blue will be equally effective as when the light colored "blues" are absorbing the attention of the fish. The dark shade will, in clear water, often fail to accomplish much; in these circumstances, no matter how well the fish may be rising, other "artificials," infallible as they may be in their seasons, will prove utterly useless.

Whilst fishing the Kennet upon one occasion, not very long ago, a rather striking instance of this came before our notice. Out of a round half-dozen of fishermen upon the length we were about to fish, there were two northern anglers, spider theorists. These gentlemen, being strongly prejudiced against the southern regimen, had very eloquently declaimed, prior to our setting forth, against the absurdity of attempting to copy any special fly, maintaining that when fish are inclined to feed, one fly is as good as another, so long as the size is somewhere near the mark, adding that when fish were not inclined for feeding "every conceivable object in the fly-book would fail to tempt them."

Finding verbal arguments ineffective, we had adjourned to the river's brim to try the effect of practical ones. The day opened bright and clear, with no flies on the water, and no fish on the rise, in which circumstances our Scotch friends wisely, in their own opinion, declined to fish. The remainder of the party, upon the other hand, rigged up with double-hooked Palmers, and commenced. These are cast on the water the same as the fly, and are then allowed to sink and move with the current. After a few fish had been allured from unseen haunts in this manner, to the amazement of the north countrymen, they protested that alluring ointment must have been used, which imputation was indignantly resented by several of the company, who affirmed that the sense of sight in fish was all they attempted to deceive; that no modern fisherman believed in the efficiency of obnoxious ointments, and other pigments, and that the only reason that Wal-



ton and Cotton shone above their numerous contemporaries so conspicuously was owing to the fact of their having proved themselves to be half-a-century ahead of their times, by ignoring such like trash. About noon a smart breeze sprang up, the sun being occasionally obscured by drifting clouds, and an odd fish or two now began to rise. The prim little Iron Blues quickly appeared, as though by magic, on the water's surface, jauntily riding the tiny billows in quaint style. Now all set to with right good will. The party separated for business, and during the ensuing hour-and-a-half we had taken as many fish as could be conveniently creeled, as had also a neighboring rodster, when one of the Scotchmen hove in sight around a sudden turn. "Now for an exemplification of the relative virtues of spider and flies," observes our neighbor. "Science *versus* ignorance and presumption," was our response.

*Scotchman*—"The fish are really playing and not feeding; I have risen dozens, but have not hooked a single fish."

"Indeed," was the reply, "but then you see you do not use alluring ointments!"

At this moment our acquaintance of the morning hooked a good fish, which, judging from the unceremonious way in which it was landed over some weeds, must have been hooked very well indeed.

"They would seem to be feeding a little better hereabouts."

"Rather," sagely observes our friend, as he opened his well-filled creel to squeeze in his late capture.

"By heavens!" ejaculates the disciple of typical delusion, "you don't mean to say you have taken that basket of fish this afternoon?"

"That's precisely what I do mean to say, nevertheless; and what is more, I will wager the price of a dinner that

each of our fly-fishers has accomplished something similar."

"Oh, you may take my word for it there has not been a fish killed down below; but I tell you what, I am going in for one or two here;" saying which, he assiduously set himself to work. Our offers of the taking fly were declined by him, although the tongue of every fish taken was seen to be covered with one particular fly, and that fly the Iron Blue. Obstinacy and prejudice still held rampant sway, obstructing the path to success, and damping the spirits of the inner man as effectually as the proverbial Scotch mist does the external one. Some fish were still to be seen rising.

"I thought I had that fish, he rose within two inches of me at something else; it's very strange they will not take the bait."

"It would be strange indeed if they did," was the reply.

After witnessing more futile efforts on the part of the rodster with the infallible artificials, we landed a small fish or two, evidently to his no small discomfort, and then wound up for the day. By the time all had met at the hotel, every creel was found to contain fish, with the exception of those of the free-thinkers, who returned in company, troubled and dispirited. It is needless for us to add that next morning saw them on board an early train bound for other latitudes, where it is hoped they will benefit by the lesson taught by experience.

The Jenny Spinner is the metamorphosis of the Iron Blue. It is of a universal milk-white color, with the exception of two crimson bands, one at each extremity of the body. In this new dress, the insect, after the manner of all other spinners, is prevalent at sunset, whenever the Iron Blue has been well on in the course of the day, which generally is the case on all cloudy days, between April and October, though the color of this fly changes

somewhat during this period. In August the Iron Blue assumes a more olive cast upon the body; in September and October the precise shade and color in wing, leg, and body is the same as the Olive Dun of the same period, having a rusty shade upon the body precisely similar, the only difference being in point of size. These little duns are sometimes erroneously supposed to be half-matured Olive Duns; but flies do not grow or expand gradually, they are full sized when they quit their sheaths, as in the larva and pupa state they feed voraciously, laying up an internal store which lasts them the remainder of their existence, as we have elsewhere observed. The Jenny Spinner is a good killer, even when the water is extremely fine. The Yellow Dun of May is very prevalent on fine days, when it should be on the cast. The Alder fly is very abundant from about the last week in May to the middle of June. It is a flat-winged fly, and comes from a water nymph. The wings are of a dull brown, veined, the body being a dark claret, and the legs of a rusty black shade. It is a great favorite with trout and chub, particularly towards evening. The natural insect may be used for dibbing, it being a large fly, though slightly varied in different localities. The Black Gnat is a very small fly, which is a great favorite with trout and grayling, when fully on the water. The fisherman's Black Gnat is a small winged fly, and is not to be confounded with the angler's plagues or pests, so prevalent at the latter part of the season; indeed, the naturalists aver that it is not a gnat in reality, that term being correct only in the case of the minute black smuts referred to, which resemble nothing better than a fine speck of soot. The copies, however, of the Black Gnat, generally speaking, are much too large, being nearer the size of a Blue Bottle. The same observation also applies to the Iron Blue, the Jenny Spinner, and other small flies. Just when the May fly begins to appear the gnats generally come on in

clouds, they being the forerunners of this celebrated fly.

#### JUNE.

As this month opens, the nymphæ of the Drake, as a general rule, arrive at a sufficient state of maturity to essay a change of element. They become active prior to the impending change, and by their movements in the bed of the water attract the attention of the trout, which feed upon them for some week or ten days before the great and continued rising. Just as the aquatic insect begins to change into aerial being, the attention of the fish is not attracted by them. Fish appreciate the quantity as well as the quality of their edibles; therefore, as long as the majority of the insects remain undeveloped in the water, their attention is monopolized by them. When, however, the surface is plenteously laden with feathery atoms of life, they speedily become as bold as the angler could desire.

Before fully entering on the subject of Drake fishing, it would be as well, perhaps, to enumerate the small flies that are killers, more especially early and late in the day, before the May flies or Drakes appear. These we give as under:— Little Chap, Black Gnat, Oak fly, Alder fly, and the Spinners. These naturals often in part accompany the Drake upon the water, before and after its appearance. The fish feed upon them when prevalent; before ten A. M. and after six P. M. being the most likely times for their proving useful; though it is by no means uncommon to find the fish taking the small flies at mid-day, when the Drake has been on for awhile. We have often watched a heavy trout eagerly skim the surface of the water in chase of a small gnat, which fish has ultimately proved, on being brought to land by this minute insect, to be fairly gorged with the May fly. The only explanation we can suggest is, that Master Speckle was anxious for a change of diet.

The Green Drake appears upon the lower portions of the streams first, often being four days or a week later in rising near the source, where the water, being colder from the springs, retards its maturity. The season of these flies varies in different localities. There are three lakes at varying altitudes at Mullingar, in Ireland. The May fly first makes its appearance upon the lower lake and is plentiful, and the fishing here is good so long as these flies remain on the water. They usually last ten or twelve days, and when all is over on the bottom lake they commence upon the next in elevation, where they also last about the same period. Then the angler must travel a little higher, to number three lake, and here the May fly will just be found coming out, and the fishing is quite as good as on the lower waters. The fish run large in these lakes, not infrequently a four or six-pound trout is taken in the day, and sometimes much larger fish are killed. Throughout Ireland the May fly comes out in abundance on many lakes. In Scotland, on the other hand, there is very little Drake fishing. Upon a few odd lochs, the Awe, Lomond, and others, a few of these flies make their appearance, but sport is not good. Upon the other hand the May flies are extremely abundant upon almost every stream that produces trout, no matter in what latitude or clime; and with regard to the exception referred to, the Stone fly forms an admirable substitute, being equally abundant at the precise time the Drakes should appear. The fishy feast of St. May fly is annually looked forward to by the major portion of fishermen as the "good time coming." Many an old timid fish that at other times only ventures abroad by night, or at twilight, now boldly makes its appearance at mid-day; and a long, thin, underfed fish, with disproportionate head, will in a few days become vigorously healthful and plump, and of nearly double the strength it possessed previous to feeding on the Green Drake.

We have had the pleasure of wetting our line upon all trout streams of note in the three kingdoms, but nowhere have we had such sport with this fly as on the Dove. Centuries ago this river was considered the best stream for trout fishing in England, and it still bears the palm for Drake fishing. In this renowned dale, which not only takes its name, but whose sylvan scenery derives an indescribable charm from the river, the flies are far more numerous than on any other stream. This may be due to various causes, the sheltering of rocks and foliage, or the geological formation of the bed of the river. This, however, we pass over; suffice it that the Green Drake, when scarce and almost a failure elsewhere, is to be found in clouds in Dovedale. Here fishermen of all grades throng the banks of bonny Dove with almost every conceivable equipment; long men with short rods, small men with large ones, from the youthful novice to the venerable old fly fisher of seventy years.

And now, with our reader's kind permission, we will conduct him to a favorite length some distance upstream, keeping a look out meanwhile in our progress as to what is doing. The first object that strikes our notice as we walk leisurely along, is an old man, who sits rod in hand under the friendly shade of some rather overgrown bushes, quietly and contentedly blowing his weed, his eye intently fixed on some object on the water near.

"Why, he's certainly float fishing," you observe.

"Not so," we reply; "it is the hale old miller from above, who has been tempted by the morning's bright promise of this being a good day with the Drake, with one of which he is dibbing or daping upon the water's surface, near the roots of the hawthorns."

"But surely he cannot hope to do much in that way?" you ask.

"The very largest fish are taken in this manner. You

FIG. 1

FOSTER'S STEEL CENTERED FLY ROD  
(PATENT)



FIG. 2

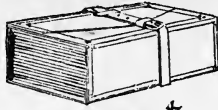


FIG. 3

FOSTER'S  
NEW FLY BOOK



FIG. 4



SPRING JOINTED LANDING HANDLE

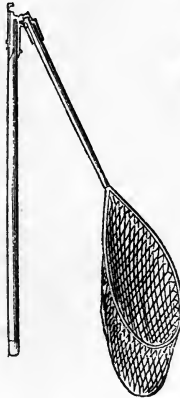


FIG. 5

NEW WINCH

RYDER'S PATENT

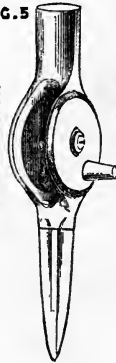
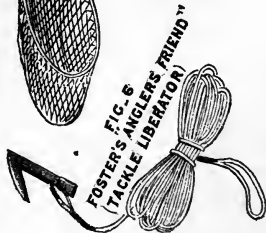


FIG. 6  
FOSTER'S ANGLER'S FRIEND™  
(TACKLE LIBERATOR)







observe he is perfectly still and easy; he has evidently seen the rise of a feeding fish below there, and he is content to patiently watch. Ah! there, he has missed that fish; the fly is gone and so is the fish; he has taken his 'hook' and left the miller's."

"Any fault of the rodster's?"

"Oh no, none whatever. The fish has simply taken hold of the living fly by the tail, and so stripped it from the hook, which was placed between the wings; he is rather fastidious in feeding. The flies are merely out as stragglers yet; if two naturals be put upon the hook, he will, ten chances to one, get him the next time. The strongest tackle is used in this primitive style of angling; the shadow of the thick foliage, and the actions of the impaled insect, aiding materially in effecting the deception." Every minute now the sun shines brighter, and more flies appear. We now move onwards, passing several more fishermen of the daping school. And now, directly preceding us, a fisherman is observed with a conspicuously long stiff rod, attached to which is a very inconsistently fine line, which is out a great length. The rodster is as motionless as though the least action would upset his equilibrium, and seriously imperil the safety of his person and property, the twenty-foot rod in question.

"Gracious goodness! Whatever kind of fishing do you call this, pray?"

"This is in general use upon the lochs frequented by the May-fly, and is sometimes very successful here. The line consists of the finest possible substance, of the very strongest textile procurable, viz., that of pure raw China silk, which, though not perceptibly thicker than the gut lash, is infinitely stronger. At the extremity of this is a live fly, which, if you watch very closely, you will see is made by the almost invisible action of the tip, to gently frisk and flutter in the most natural manner possible,

upon the top of the water, exactly like a lusty insect in the full enjoyment of perfect liberty. This is a much more scientific way of dibbing than the one recently noticed. The gut is generally used three yards long, and is as fine as it is possible to draw it. The hook is small and is cropped short shank; this is usually inserted between the wings, as in the other style of daping. Occasionally two hooks are placed back to back, in which case two flies are used, this more particularly on cold windy days."

"How about the wind? I should imagine the whole thing impracticable without wind."

"A slight breeze is certainly essential to the successful working of the method; but, when too strong, a small-sized split shot, attached near the foot line, acts admirably as ballast."

"See yonder! we have still another type of a Drake fisherman. His method is more difficult to practice, but it is more scientific, and is generally more successful. Mark how carefully he measures the distance requisite to reach the rising fish, that now forms the focus upon which his entire attention is fixed. He is evidently a more than ordinarily skillful fly-rodster. Observe how carefully he keeps away from the river's edge, casting dexterously within an inch or two of the rising fish."

"Is he not rather circumspect in his use of the rod?"

"He is casting the live fly, and that careful swing round from the left to the right is absolutely requisite to retain the fly upon the hook. Were not due care and caution paid to this the fly would continually be flipped off, and nothing but bare hooks presented to the fish. It must not be forgotten that

' Though gudgeons strike  
At the bare hook and bait alike,  
The wily trout regardless lie,  
Till art like nature sends the fly.'

The rodster before us is an adept at this particular branch of the art of fly-fishing. His rod is very pliable, as is necessary; and provided his gut and tackle are of the finest description, he will do some execution before night-fall."

Whilst we have been taking observations the fish have turned out from their hidden haunts and sheltered nooks, attracted by the ever-increasing show of May-flies, which flutter upon the surface of the water. Without waiting to see the luck of our ideal rodster, we hasten onwards until our favorite swim is reached. Here the tackle is speedily arranged, fine double hooks mounted back to back upon the finest stained gut, being attached to the extremity of our treble X fine lashes. A live Drake is now placed upon the larger or uppermost of the two hooks, the hook being inserted in one side of the haunch forming the shoulder, which will admit of its maintaining a natural position when thrown into the water. And now we commence.

But stay! your rod being not made specially for the purpose, will be found too stiff and difficult to use successfully. We must first remedy this little, though serious matter. This small piece of fine lead wire will work the oracle if rolled round the tip of the top. "There, how does that feel? Rather limpy? Take an inch or so of wire off then. Now it is all right, everything that could be wished, in fact. Now let's at it! Bring round the rod over the left shoulder, taking especial care not to whisk, or whip off the fly. Now that was done very nicely indeed, and if it only had reached that fish over there, it would doubtless have been appreciated, as it in all justice deserved. Again, 'up he comes.' Strike! Right! You have him this time; 'handle him gently, treat him with care'—slightly parodying Tom Hood. Take him a little below there to the shallow, and land him, or he will damage our sport hereabouts. That was

very prettily done; sharp for another fly; here, you have it upon your coat; the very air is getting thick with flies. Ah! the sun is now obscured by passing vapors; stay your hand; now for the artificial. Art before nature, when there is a lively chance of its being successful. Here we have our floating favorite, the Canadian wood-duck-winged Drake, with hollow wheaten straw body, let's have him on. Now for business. Away surges the line, the further extremity of which no sooner touches the water than it is seized, and you have an antagonist who, in the tug which immediately ensues, proves worthy of your steel. The first terrific wrench he gives the rod and tackle as he dashes majestically away, shows him to be the tyrant of the length hereabouts. Did you not courteously yield to his wild and indignant rush with faint reserve, the fight would be brought to an abrupt conclusion, for had your tackle thrice the strength it has in reality, grim force would be utterly futile. Play upon him by placing a heavy strain upon the rod, allow him to steal his lengths heavily, and more heavily, in his frantic efforts to escape, ever keeping a look-out for mischief, such as sunken timber, roots, and sticks, to avoid which the heaviest strain the line is capable of standing must be put upon him, or he will prove victor, and will vanish with his spoils, consisting of several yards of choice gut, and perhaps your last artificial, which, though they may desperately encumber him, are not to be recovered. Exercise, therefore, your judgment and ingenuity, and his natural cunning will be put to rout. Time is no especial object in a fight of this description; every waning minute is a minute gained; the heavier the fish the longer the time to be expended over him. According to the poundage of a trout, as a rule, the sport he gives extends over an equal number of minutes, though, in a case like this, "each seems an hour." These disjointed sentences escape us as the scene is prolonged. Now, how-

ever, our captive's spirit is broken, his golden broadside lies athwart the silvery stream; and as he is "limp as a log," you slowly tug him ashore. "Don't present arms with that net, but keep it out of sight until his tail end can be got at first. Capital! There! Safe at last, a three-and-a-half pounder if an ounce; small danger of your eclipsing this if you fish for a week. But now is the prime time of the whole season, the fish are all out and feeding, therefore it is the time for the angler to weed out heavy fish, whose cannibal propensities are exemplified the more weekly, monthly, and yearly, until the water near their haunt is entirely depopulated. Let us see how's the enemy?—2.15 P. M. You will extract a heavy pannier before dinner, if you labor against time; though the fun may furiously thicken, don't retain more than your fill."

Personally speaking we make a practice of drawing the line at the lid of the creel, all conquests afterwards being relinquished as soon as effected. This rule, humane reader, we would commend to your acceptance, in all exceptionally favorable circumstances, whenever practicable.

Should the weather prove fine, and favored with warm sun, the flies will appear a few days earlier in each locality, but will terminate a week or so before their wonted time. The genial weather and warm temperature of the water admit of their attaining maturity almost simultaneously; and in these circumstances, it naturally follows that their stay will be more limited. Chub are bold risers at the May fly, and after the close time, that is about the last week of the Drake, much diversion may be derived from Mr. Leatherhead. Grayling and all coarse fish come in season on the 16th of June. The small flies, when numerous, tempt them from the slow-running deeps to the rapids or shallows, where they congregate in shoals, being a gregarious fish. The Little

Chap and Black Gnat—both very small flies—are usually picked off by them in preference to the Duns, Spinners, Oak fly, or what not, that may be plentiful. We have frequently counted eight or ten fine fellows rising within the compass of a few yards, while at the same time there has not been another fish rising up or down stream. Under these circumstances, it will be obvious to all that great care is necessary in “playing” the fish, for should the rodster land his fish in a reckless or clumsy manner, his chances of hooking a second will be exceedingly small. The best way to land a grayling, under the above circumstances, is to keep a gentle pull on the rod, and let the fish bolt down to the bottom of the water for some distance below where he rose, where he may be safely bagged. Grayling may be taken in the latter part of June with the Honey-Dun and Mulberry Bumble, Little Chap, and small Midges. The rod, like the line and gut, should be fine; an ordinary one-handed fly rod, in good play, is decidedly the best, as with it you will often feel the fish in time to hook him; whereas, with a less pliable tool you will feel nothing, save perchance a stake or a root. An hour or so at daybreak will, at this season of the year, seldom fail to yield capital remuneration in the way of sport, as, during the warmer weather, numbers of insects fall upon the water in the dark hours, and are taken by the fish as soon as they are discernible each morning.

For a week or ten days after the Green Drake has disappeared the trout lie dormant in the deeps; until again hunger-bitten they disdain small food, but after the lapse of this time, they leave the stills and return to the shallows and rapids.

The Oak fly is really invaluable to the fly-fisher in June, after the Drake season. This fly has the form somewhat of a Blue-bottle, and the color of the Sand fly, the body being more slender than that of the former,

and ribbed with black. This is a good fly to dib with in a style similar to the May fly. Towards evening, after sundown, the Red and Golden Spinners are generally on the water in great force, at intervals here and there, mostly near weirs, bridges, or overhanging trees and bushes, where they may be seen whirling in clouds. The trout are in better condition at the latter part of this month than at any other part of the year, a small half-pound fish proving as strong and vigorous as a fish double the weight a month or two earlier or later. The extraordinary fattening qualities of the heavy ephemera are mainly instrumental in effecting the change.

#### JULY.

The fish are now to be found in the small eddies and small streams behind large stones, sunken rocks, or any other impediment, in and by the sides of rapid streams. The Golden, July, and Pale Evening Duns, and the Pale Evening White (shades of the Ephemera Olive) will predominate. The Spinners, especially the Golden, are very numerous, as are also the Midges and the Grass Moths.

This month is perhaps the most difficult to fish successfully during the whole season. We often meet with young inexperienced anglers during a long sultry July day, who flog industriously from "early morn till dewy eve," meeting with but faint encouragement. Fine weather would seem to act as a magnet to draw the uninitiated to the water side. For the special guidance of such, we append a few brief instructions as to the plan of procedure. To commence at daybreak, a cast of flies similar to the dead ones seen upon the water beneath the overhanging boughs of bushes, trees, etc., should be used over the moving fish before breakfast; when it is no uncommon thing to find the fish rise until the dead flies are picked off. During mid-day it is of small use whip-

ping the waters, unless the day be windy, wet or cloudy; in these circumstances a cast of "artificial," corresponding with the "naturals" then upon the water, will be found to take. In the event of the weather being hot and oppressive, use the Red Palmer Caterpillar, of which more anon. At sunset small flies may again be resorted to. The evening rise after a seasonable day at this period is a sight worth seeing upon any well stocked water. During and after twilight the Caterpillar, Dun Cut, Moths, Coachman, and any of the large trout flies contained in the fly-book, will be found most deadly. In concluding, we may state that, provided with suitable tackle, the fault lies with the rodster if no sport is obtained.

In the middle of the day, during the whole of this month, small blacks are frequently numerous; both trout and grayling feed upon them when on in sufficient strength. These tribes of blacks are almost invisible in most lights, and especially so when on the water. Whenever the fish are rising at these minute specks of life, it is almost vain to present anything else to their notice. The tantalizing effect of this insect upon the temper of the fisherman has caused it to be stigmatized as the "angler's plague;" the pests themselves being little larger than a grain of mustard seed, closely resembling the appearance of a minute ball of soot, the wings so filmy as to be almost indistinguishable to the naked eye. This is the black gnat of the naturalist; the gnat of the fisherman is a much larger insect. The term gnat is usually associated with the troublesome insect whose habitual tendency would appear to be to plague and annoy the human race. The fly-dresser's gnat is usually of quite a different species, being of wondrously increased dimensions, more often resembling the common house-fly rather than the gnat. The fisherman's Black Gnat proper, is a fly a little less than the Iron Blue, and should never be



dressed larger. The artificial "plague" is ingeniously contrived by a fine point strand of black ostrich herl; but the hooks used being too small to be effective for anything except grayling or small trout, we can scarcely commend their use. It may be an artistic feat to land a fish through the instrumentality of an artificial of this description, when attached to gut collars as fine as human hair, but the predominating chance of breakages, and the uncertainties over which the fly-fisher exercises little or no control, of unsafely hooking, etc., cause us to ignore these, adopting in preference a safe-sized hook and fly, viz., the Little Chap. This is somewhat less than the angler's Black Gnat, and is dressed buzzy, and with this the fish's chances of hooking and holding are largely increased. There are some fly-fishers who care less about landing fish than hooking and turning them; to such as these, as a matter of course, a more correct copy is preferred.

About the middle of this month the Wren Tail appears, and on hot days often in large numbers. Being a land insect it is of much consequence to the angler in calm weather. There are always, through the season, a variety of "oddlings" about, which, as a rule, affect neither fish nor fisherman, especially when seasonable flies prevail. Favorable weather for the fly at this part of the year implies brisk breezes, dull cloudy skies, or sharp showers. The evening rise after a hot, dry, sultry day, is nevertheless a famous time for sport, the fish usually rising vigorously until after twilight. The flies that have risen and hidden in the foliage fringing the river's bank during the day, turn out as soon as the power of the sun begins to wane. From the natural position of the fish in clear water, they have every advantage of position, and faculty for distinguishing differences the most trivial between one fly and another; and often is the angler nonplussed in his endeavors to arrive at the precise thing absorbing their attention.

A valuable aid at these times, we have always found in the use of a small glass-bottomed drinking-horn, as in the froth and foam that is found in quiet corners, at points where the water eddies round, drowned specimens of what are monopolizing the attention of the fish are sure to be discovered. Whenever the trout are not to be drawn to the surface, owing to the scarcity of surface food, there is for the fly-fisher a rarely failing method of procuring sport by means of the Red Palmer Caterpillar. The way we use it is to cast it precisely the same as the fly, at the extremity of a nine-foot gut lash, in which fineness and strength are combined. This done, and all being in readiness, the mounted cast is delivered with more than ordinary care, a couple of yards or so above any fish that may be on the look out for what the stream brings forth. In comparatively still and clear water, this style of angling exceeds most from a genuine sportsman's point of view, as each movement of the fish is plainly visible to the rodster. The lure should be slightly worked by a wrist movement, just sufficient to open and shut the feather fibres.\* When the artificial has passed the fish the operation must be repeated; and fish, especially large ones, are more often than not killed after a certain amount of attention to this matter. We have often creeled a trout, grayling, salmon, or chub, after casting twelve, fifteen, and even twenty times, the bait being subjected to an all round inspection each time of its appearance. It is thought by some, that by this repetition of casts and workings the fish finally becomes eager, under the impression that from the constant succession of baits they are becoming numerous. Be this as it may, that the fish do take this bait not only in these, but in a variety of other circumstances, is now an established fact, placed beyond all dispute. We have

---

\* The author refers to up-stream fishing.

personally used this lure for more than forty years, and can fully testify to its killing powers when properly presented. By its use the fly-fisher is enabled to pursue his sport at any time of the day (or night) when the fish are not rising, and all ordinary means fail. This bait was originated by a famous Dove angler some half-century or so ago. This worthy, however, assiduously kept the thing private, and it was finally divulged in a purely accidental manner. Mr. Professor having, during a fly-fishing match, through a laxity of vigilance, left a type of the unknown mystic lure upon a twig on the opposite bank, his rival, upon whom the action had not been lost, being in the vicinity, took the opportunity of solving a problem that had perplexed him and other fishermen for several seasons, as to the nature of an artificial capable of killing almost unfailingly, and that, too, when all ordinary artificials were all but useless. The discoverer referred to, was the writer, from whom the author of the "Fly-fisher's Entomology," and the general public, obtained the secret of the mid-water fly. As Mr. Ronalds points out, the artificial in question is a copy of the *Arctia Caga*, or Tiger Moth (commonly known as the Woolly Bear). In Scotch and Irish waters it is equally killing when dressed somewhat larger, as it is in the well-whipped streams of England. To both the salmon and trout fisher it forms a sort of auxiliary in reserve, convenient in otherwise trying circumstances.

#### AUGUST.

During this month the most favorable days for fly-fishing are when the weather is cloudy, and the water's surface is slightly ruffled by a breeze of wind. As the weather usually prevailing is similar to that of the month preceding, the instructions there given apply equally to the present month. Upon clear sunny days the fish will be found under the shade of the bushes, on the sides of

the banks. The Caterpillar, both as a mid-day and night fly, may be used with success, seasonable weather prevailing. The best evening flies are the Greentail or Grannum, Golden Dun, the Spinners, and the Intermediate. The last is a representation of the fluttering attitude of a dun during the transformation scene, when it slips from its old covering, or skin, and re-appears more delicately graceful and fragile than before. The fish are especially partial to the up-winged naturals when in this temporary transitory stage, for which there may be many reasons, the most important being that the metamorphosis always, or nearly so, takes place upon the top of the water, and therefore within reach of the feeding fish, which, it is well known, show a marked partiality for deformed or distressed prey, inasmuch as they will seize the sickly little fish, or a copy of one, from amongst a shoal of perfect fish, almost any one of which was in their power.

The Red and Black Ants, Gray Gnat, and Wren-Tail, are to be seen upon the water on bright days, the small flies being then abundant. These are essentially mid-day flies, the larger species being numerous towards evening. When the fish are feeding upon small "naturals," the contents of the stomach of the fish taken should be examined, so as to ascertain correctly the taking fly. Sometimes this is discerned by an inspection of the tongue only, especially when the fish are feeding well.

About the 10th of this month, the August shade of the Large Browns (August Dun) comes upon the water; north of the Midlands it is much later. This fly, in common with the duns, seeks the shelter of the neighboring foliage immediately upon rising from the bed of the river, venturing forth about sunset. This, and the light Turkey Brown shade, are to be used with signal success until the fisherman can no longer see to manage his line. The March Brown, dressed a size or so

larger than those usually used this side of the border, is the best trouting fly throughout Scotland, being a standard killer upon all its waters, excepting the Tay and Tweed, for which rivers the ordinary southern flies are adapted. In 1864, Lord Erskine took the heaviest take of trout of the season upon the Tweed, with the small black Gnat.

A heavy shower often has a very beneficial effect upon the rodster's sport. We have frequently seen young anglers, at the preliminary drops of an impending shower, rush for the nearest shelter, whilst the descending rain drops, beating down myriads of insects upon the water, allured the fish from their customary haunts to the surface, where in these circumstances they are to be readily taken by the persevering angler. As soon as the favorable and friendly rain has ceased to fall, Mr. Novice assiduously recommences to flog the stream, inwardly congratulating himself, doubtless, at having been so fortunate in evading an unpleasant experience.

Amongst the flies numerous in the evenings of sultry days, the spinners figure conspicuously, from the Great Red of the heavy browns, to the prim little creatures of the Iron Blue order. The fish are usually all life from sunset until dark, and after this, too, when the moon rises; thus, if the angler is not busy too, in all probability the fault lies with himself. This month is the best in the whole season for minnow-fishing in brooks and rapid running waters. For information upon this subject we refer our readers to Trout Spinning. The largest trout are generally found feeding at some distance from very deep water, encumbered by tree roots or large stones; sometimes the bank is hollowed under an old tree root for yards, by the constant washing of the water. When disturbed, the trout will make for these retreats at a rapid pace, and should the unfortunate angler allow the fish once to get to his hold when hooked, he will to a certainty lose his capture, and imperil his tackle. Much is

to be learned, therefore, when the water is fine and low, as then observations may be taken as to the lay of the river's bed, etc.

#### SEPTEMBER.

Grayling are now rapidly coming into condition. Seasonable weather prevailing, good sport is afforded by these fish wherever prevalent. Trout and grayling take the fly in an entirely different way; the former, as a rule, comes up boldly to meet the fly as it floats down-stream, whilst the grayling seldom rises at a fly until it has passed over or close by him. This is owing to the singular formation of the mouth of this fish, the upper part of which, projecting over the bottom lip, incapacitates it from closing upon the fly when before it, as is habitual with the trout. The grayling being gregarious, it is of the utmost importance that each fish should be landed quietly and carefully, with the least possible disturbance of the water. In order to accomplish this satisfactorily, the hooked fish should be headed down-stream, whenever practicable, to the nearest available spot for landing. The angler who has been accustomed to whip for trout upon the waters of a small lake or pool will know perfectly well how to accomplish this. To be a successful grayling fisher, it is essential to have thorough command of the rod, to have a sensitive touch, a quick eye, and a gentle hand. The secret of success in fact, as in other branches of the art, lies in the acquirement of certain details, which together constitute proficiency. First, the art of throwing should be thoroughly understood and acquired. This rule is imperative, as the least awkward movement will "knock the fish off the feed." It should ever be remembered that the eye of the grayling is even quicker and keener than that of the trout, though his cupidity is greater.

Next in importance ranks "striking." This requires

a quick hand and eye; and if either one or the other be in any way defective, the angler should not strike at all, but should let the fish hook himself. Striking forms one of the most fertile sources of loss and disaster that exists in the modern method of fly-fishing. This is particularly exemplified in the case of grayling, they being, as an old writer quaintly expresses it, "excessively tender about the chaps," and a very slight motion of the wrist is ample to drive home the small hook. It is here that quickness of sight and tenderness of touch are called into play, in the absence of which requisites the delicate tackle, or the hold of the hook, and sometimes even a portion of the jaw of the hooked fish, will be broken away by an impetuous rodster. Great care is therefore essential in this matter.

Whenever the grayling are not rising, unlike the trout, they congregate in considerable numbers at the bottom of deep holes; but when there is a good number of flies upon the water, they quickly leave the deeps, and will be found in the slow running streams, more especially where the water averages a depth of three to four feet. Here they rise freely, so long as the supply of flies is unfailling; but upon these quitting the surface of the water, the fish gradually retire again to the still deeps. The best flies to use for grayling are the Grey-palmer, Willow and Needle fly, the Little Pale Blue, and seasonable shades of the Olive Dun order, which are all more or less numerous at this time, if seasonable weather prevails. The first-named is taken freely when the common wood and house flies are stricken with cold, and are carried upon the water by every gust of wind. Every naturalist knows that these flies go blind in this and the following month, but they do not all know that they furnish food for fish. Father Izaak used to make this fly from gray badger's hair: he terms it the Hearth fly; but there is every reason for believing it to be the common house fly.

The experienced would naturally suppose that a copy of the insect at rest, in correct attitude, would be the thing to fish with; but owing to the incessant struggles of the "natural" when on the water, this would practically prove a great mistake. Most land flies flutter conspicuously when upon the water, causing a ripple which is not infrequently taken for the rise of a fish. The Willow and Needle flies are also great favorites with these fish, and when sufficiently prevalent are the centre of attraction for the time being. The Little Pale Blue (September shade of the Iron Blue), like all little ephemerals, is fully appreciated throughout the autumn. These flies appear upon bright days, and are general flies upon every trout and grayling stream. The temperature of the weather and water being now similar to that of May, the Duns common to that month are again prevalent, and are useful for the capture of trout and grayling. The whole of the foregoing flies are seasonable "naturals."

There may be days, however, upon which none of these may be out, when the fly-fisher has to fall back upon what are designated "fancy" flies, the chief and foremost of which are the palmer-dressings, known as the Tassel fly or Bumble. These are constructed in many shades, ranging from the blue-white ordinary dressing to the dark furnace or black red one. The Honey Dun, the Red, and the Common Bumble, are the best for autumn fishing. Tag-tailed artificials are also used to tempt the fastidious fish, being hackled flies with a tuft of wool or feather at the tail, after the fashion of a salmon fly; but fly-fishing for grayling cannot be said to be usually lucrative when the fish are not on the rise. The food of the grayling consists of aerial and aquatic insects and their larvæ, small worms, grubs, etc. Amongst the contents of their stomachs are also small shells and pebbles; these latter, we doubt not, are taken



up, as in the case of gallinaceous birds, to serve some digestive function.

In most rivers containing these fish they are not found in the higher portions; they seem to prefer the deeper waters, at the bottom of which they lie in the hot months, to avoid the effects of the high temperature of the atmosphere. Whenever the water is a little discolored the fish will be on the move for food; a little inclement weather often does wonders in preparing the water and its inhabitants for the pursuit of sport; and the most favorable time for the tyro in fly-fishing for grayling is to repair to the river's bank when the water and weather are thus favorable. Grayling will frequently take a sunken fly upon the stills, oftentimes even when some considerable distance below the surface; but this method need never be resorted to when they care for surface feeding. Upon windy days the Cinnamon fly is often found useful amongst the trout, which are as partial to the larger naturals as the grayling to the smaller ones. In genial weather it is of little use employing it; as, although there may be thousands upon the grassy bank near the river, a smart breeze is needful to carry them upon the water within the reach of the fish. Clear, frosty nights tend to improve autumn fishing. They invigorate the grayling, causing them to fight gamely when hooked, which is the case with other fish seasonable in the colder season.

#### OCTOBER.

This month may be said to be the best in the year in which to fish for grayling, which are now in prime condition. These fish have acquired a reputation for being less wily, and therefore more easily deluded than trout. This may have originated from the fact of their being at times given, like the salmon, to take some gaudy combination resembling no living insect in creation. The angler who contemplates an excursion to the haunts of

these fish, fully expecting to do much execution by such unnatural lures, will, in nine hundred and ninety-nine chances in a thousand, be grievously disappointed; an odd brace, indeed, may be considered the average yield per diem of the nondescript artificials.

Our earnest endeavors have always been to put the novice in the way for thorough sport; and having this object in our mind's eye, we would impress upon the mind of such an one that, although in an exceptional way a fish now and again at rare intervals may be turned over by almost anything in the shape of an artificial, usually they are found to be more expert in discerning the points of difference between a natural and its copy than any trout that ever evaded hook. Their visual organs we believe to be superior to those of any other fish; for, although they habitually lie at the bottom of the water, they are not only greater adepts at fly-catching, but can discern the most trivial deficiency in color of any imitation of what may be so monopolizing their attention. Prodigious takes of these fish are often secured, when fully upon the rise at the flies with which the water's surface is laden; but these are effected by an exercise of considerable proficiency and caution on the part of the rodster. The October shade of the Iron Blue Dun order, the April shade of the Olive Duns, together with the Willow and Needle flies (small), and Gray Palmer, are the flies that will be found in this month. In unseasonable weather there is often a multiplicity of winged insects about, each species having but few representatives; in these circumstances the sunk-fly system may be practised with success. This is more particularly resorted to upon still deeps, when the cast of flies, after being thoroughly saturated, is allowed to sink some five inches beneath the water's surface. Here the rodster has to discern by the feel when a fish touches the lure. Grayling will often examine the fly in a very leisurely sort of

manner before essaying to finally absorb it. A gentle hitch should always be given before taking the line from the water, as by that means fish are often killed that would otherwise be broken from and lost. It is also necessary to cast directly across stream, a few feet above the rising fish, instead of directly up-stream, as in the case of the trout; as with a slack line the grayling are apt to reject the fly without being hooked, when under water especially. A gradual drawing motion, when not tempting the fish upon the surface, may be described, until the gut collar reaches the rodster's side of the river. The very largest fish take the fly in a remarkably quiet manner, therefore it is essential to give a slight feeling motion of the wrist at the least possible indication of a rise. A marked characteristic of the grayling is, that he will often unconcernedly permit the lure to go by many times before closing upon it. This is exemplified in a very marked degree in grub fishing, when, after the bait has passed say nineteen times out of twenty, the twentieth by no means infrequently proves successful.

The accredited theory is, that the constant passage of the lure acts as a sort of ground bait in exciting the attention of the fish. Be it so or not, the fact remains that grayling are thus to be taken when not exactly upon the feed, and more especially the larger fish. Frosty nights and genial days bring the flies upon the water, and the delicately fastidious grayling upon the rise in a thoroughly healthful style; and if the angler fails then to do considerable execution, the fault most assuredly lies at home. One of the best day's grayling fishing we ever experienced was on the Dove, a few miles above Uttoxeter. The water's surface was plentifully besprinkled with the October shades of the Iron Blue, every grayling upon the length seemed to have left its accustomed haunt in the bed of the water to regale upon them, and as these fish, in the lower portions of the river, predominate largely

over the trout, the few rods that happened to be out were doing heavy work when once furnished with presentable "artificials." Two fish were now and again taken at the same cast. This scene was prolonged for several hours; a sudden atmospheric change, however, finally caused the almost instantaneous retreat of the flies from the water's surface, the repast of the fish and our sport being as suddenly brought to an abrupt conclusion. The produce of a couple of neighboring rods were to be enumerated by the dozen; not only their basket, but their empty provision receptacles were filled with silvery grayling of all sizes upwards of half-a-pound. For our own part, we had captured at an early part of the day sufficient to fill the vacuum in our pannier, and for the remainder and greater part of the time had returned all subsequent captures. Such days as these are ever to be looked back upon as memorable reminiscences, and at the end of a long life of activity, cannot fail to form food for pleasing reflection.

#### NOVEMBER.

As the season advances, the grayling will be found a few yards above and below the deep holes, where they will rise when the flies are on the water, even in severe weather; indeed it is by no means an uncommon thing to find grayling taking well during a severe frost, when the line resembles an extended icicle, for like Jack, the grayling are in the very zenith of healthful vigor in the cold season of the year. When the world of vegetation is lifeless, and the whole landscape is submerged by an arctic wave, no sport can possibly be more exhilarating, or more conducive to health than grayling fishing in these circumstances. The rodster uses grasshoppers or hoppers of another shade before and after mid-day, filling up the interval with the fly, say from twelve A. M. to two P. M. A pleasing variety is thus afforded, which seldom

fails to meet with due appreciation on the part of the fish. The flies to use, even in mid-winter, should be chosen from those last "on" in the latter part of the fall; as when Old Sol makes a feeble effort to rise in the heavens, a few insects are almost invariably induced to leave their retreat to meet death, either in the jaws of the fish or by the nipping wind of night-fall. A capital fancy fly throughout the grayling season is an artificial we term the Winter Dun. The body of this is formed of flat gold or silver, neatly laid on; legs, light blue hen's hackle; wings fieldfare. This fly should be fished point. We can commend this before all the fancy fly species for the allurements of grayling in either clear or discolored water. In the early winter season the flies prevalent in February will be out; the sombre-hued dun of that month, and on fine days the cock-winged dun will be seen about; and as flies appear merely in nominal numbers, the grayling exhibit great eagerness in taking what comes within their ken. Should the day prove cloudy, with wind or showers of rain, the Light Bumble will be found deadly, as will also the Gray Palmer. Upon the occasions the Cinnamon Fly is often to be observed on and about the water, and when this is so a copy may be placed as dropper with advantage, as, though grayling as a rule prefer small flies, the big fish will often rise to larger lures. In clear water the fish will sometimes be observed to double back, after cautiously rising to the surface, without closing on the fly presented. This is often owing to the tackle being too strong and coarse. We would impress upon the tyro in the art of "flying" for grayling, the absolute necessity of the very finest bottom tackle, ere he can pursue his sport with any degree of satisfaction. As in trout fishing, whenever the water is slightly discolored, and when the fish are on the move, the chances of sport with the grayling are enhanced. In these circumstances the novice, providing he can put out a moderate line, will achieve

wonders; but upon the other hand, when the day is calm and clear, with no friendly breeze to detract from the transparency of the stills of the limpid deeps, the proficient's best exertions and most accomplished skill are called as much into request in November as with trout in July.

By way of conclusion we would observe that whenever mist is observed to rise from the surface of the water, either at night-fall in the warmer months, or at any part of the day in late autumn, all prospects of sport are to be considered annulled.\* However much a descending or descended cloud may enhance sport, certain it is that an ascending one infallibly indicates to the observant mind that further attempts at allurements would be futile, the fish being off the feed for the time being.

---

## CHAPTER XV.

### SALMON AND SEA TROUT FISHING.

THE SALMON; SEA AND BULL TROUT; SEWIN; SALMON FISHING AS A SPORT; THE ROD, LINE, AND REEL; HOW TO USE THEM; JIGGERING AND SULKY FISH; SALMON FLIES; SPINNING, ETC.

Before entering into the practical part of this ponderous subject, we think a few remarks as to the varieties of salmon, sea or white trout, and other anadromous fish, may not only be necessary, but may also serve to supply a deficiency hitherto conspicuous in angling works.

In the ichthyological classification of migratory salmoni-

---

\* We have noted this fact time and again when fly fishing for black bass on the rivers of the Middle States.

dæ much difference exists, the ordinary method followed by naturalists in determining species proving inadequate. So innumerable are the variations, that the sub-generic group (Salmones) are for the most part named after the water they inhabit, as Galway sea trout, Tay salmon, Shannon salmon, etc., etc. The differences between these consist both in size, form, and color; and are due to the following among other causes:—First, the varying properties of the water in different localities; second, the complications implied by interbreeding—an extremely fertile source of difficulty, producing, as it does, endless changes in detail amongst the Salmonoids; and thirdly, the varieties dependent upon age and sexual development.

Salmon proper attain much greater weight and dimensions than the sewin, sea, or white types, and when in condition are also distinguished by outward form and color, in both of which we deem them unequalled by any other order, family, or species of fish. The sea and bull trout—the former shorter and broader than salmon proper\*—are distinctively marked by a quantity of black spots, which, when the fish is cooked, become more vivid. There is also a marked absence of that beautiful fiery bronze natural to the well-conditioned salmon; and lastly, we may state that, if not distinguishable from the genuine species in its outward aspect, its inferior edible qualities should render it easily discernible. In the north the sea trout is equally abundant with the salmon, and large quantities find their way to the southern towns, where they are retailed by the fish dealers, whose bois-

---

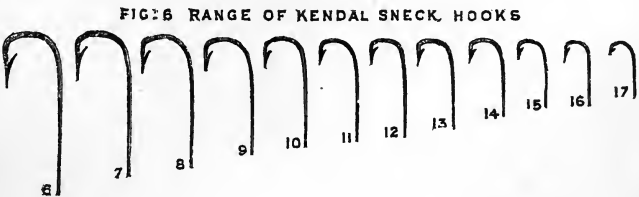
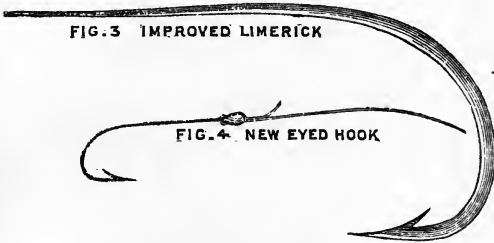
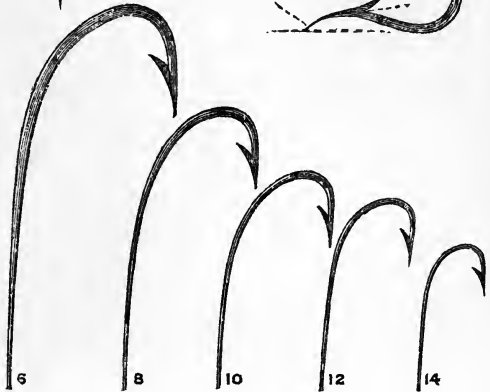
\* Sea and bull trout, so called in the text, do not vary sufficiently in structure to be assigned to different species. The term "bull trout" is often indiscriminately given by English authors to the sea salmon, sea trout, and the Welsh trout or "sewin." A slight difference in coloration and form gives rise to a confusion of local names in England as well as with us.

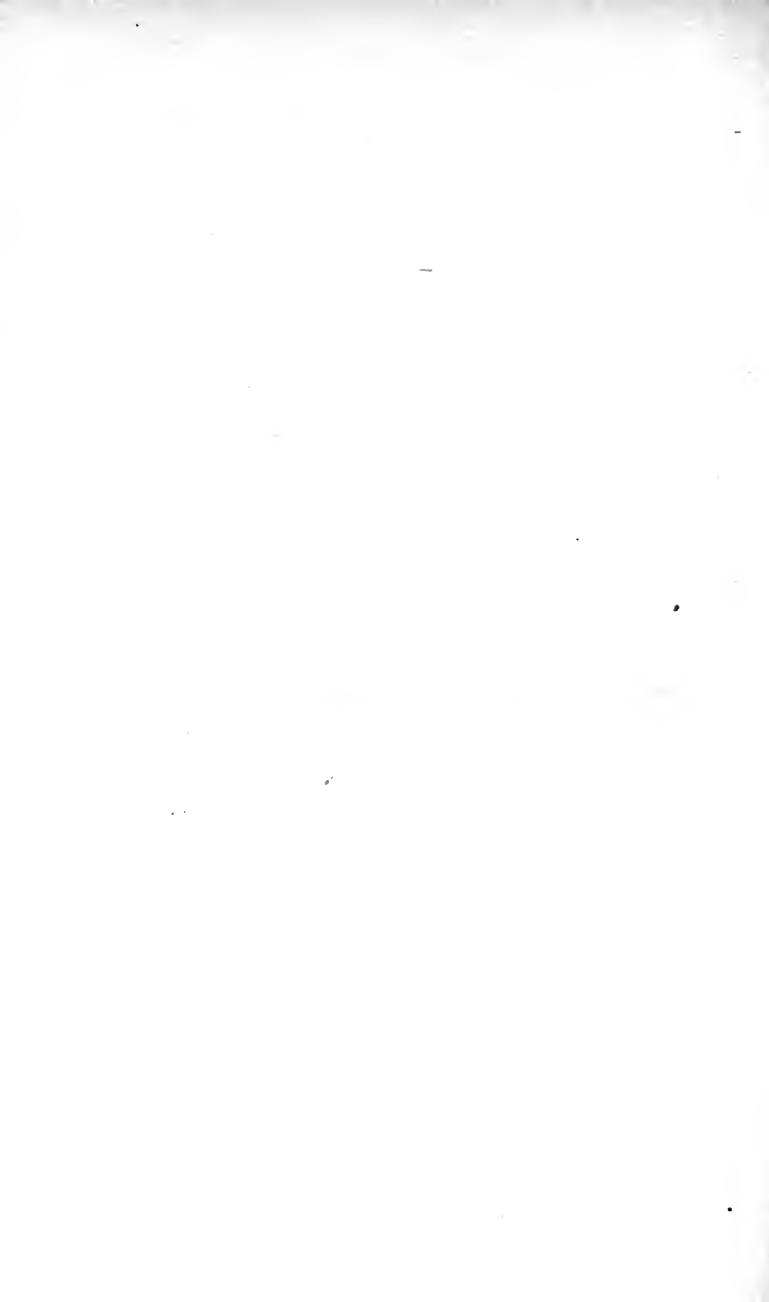
terous cry of "Salmon without any gammon!" is heard whenever a fresh instalment arrives. In many cases these people have been unwittingly "gammoned" themselves, their customers, nevertheless, being the ultimate dupes. From the fisherman's point of view, the sea trout is equal to the finest grilse that ever ascended the Tay or Tweed, exceeding, as he does, for gameness and pertinacity every other British fish. The bull trout ascend their native rivers in April and May, their first appearance at any distance from salt water being immediately after an early spring flood. These are for the most part young fish, ranging from three to five, and occasionally six pounds. The oldest and best fish ascend in great numbers in November and December, ranging from six to twenty pounds in weight. In some localities the term bull trout is erroneously applied to the sea or white trout; nor is the error confined to the illiterate, some authors of eminence having endorsed this inaccuracy. Mr. Frank Buckland was convinced of the fallacy of this when he penned the following:—"It is supposed by some that the sea trout and bull trout are identical. I know the bull trout very well; indeed, I could pick him out amongst a thousand other salmonidæ. I am certain, therefore, that there is a difference between the ordinary sea trout and bull trout."\* From our own observations we are led to think that the bull species are hybrids between the salmon and sea trout (*S. trutta*). The external difference between the salmon and bull trout is much less than between salmon and sea trout, both in point of color and size, thirteen to fifteen pounds being the average weight. The sea † or salmon trout, upon

\* Professor Gunther of the British Museum, one of the most prominent ichthyologists in Europe, states that these fish are of the same species.

† The sea trout of Canada (to which habitat those of America are confined) will average about two pounds. In certain localities, they, however, maintain an average weight of five or six pounds. This is especially the case in the river Nouvelle in Gaspe, Canada.







the other hand, seldom attain more than six or seven pounds weight. They abound in nearly every beck and burn, loch and river of Scotland and Ireland, and are readily taken with the fly. We have already adverted to their gameness: the bold dash, wild leap, and game fight are more or less exemplified wherever they may be found. The rivers most noted for these fish are the Spey, Don, Tay, and Tweed. The peal, or salmon peal, as it is termed, is the grilse stage of these fish, as it is also of the

SEWIN (*S. Cambrious*), which species, though chiefly found in Wales, is also abundant in several southern rivers of England. This fish is closely allied to the sea, white, or salmon trout. It has the delicate coloring of the salmon parr, the prevailing hue being a pale slate blue, which graduates from the dull black upon the back to the pure chaste white of the breast, the broad expanse of the side being profusely spotted with black, and occasionally red; the latter about the lateral line. Sewin, in common with the whole species, are subject to great variety of tint, the action of fresh water causing them, after a protracted stay, to assume somewhat the color of the ordinary brown trout.\* Commercially the sewin is not nearly so important a fish as the salmon trout. Its flesh is generally preferred as an article of diet, but it is not so plentiful as its northern relative. The whole migratory body of the salmonidæ family flourish infinitely better in the more northern than in temperate regions. The salmon of Norway, and even so far north as Iceland, attain much greater dimensions than the natives of more southern latitudes. The sewin is far less vigorous than other members of the same family, and when its instincts prompt it to ascend the rivers to attain the requisite

---

\* This peculiarity has been observed in the American sea trout. The alternation of color from a bright silver, their sea livery, to the darker shades and even to the vermilion spots of the trout of the brooks, has been attested by observant anglers.

medium temperature of water and atmosphere to insure the vitality of its eggs, is more easily obstructed in its passage.

BULL TROUT have the most hardy temperament, being more vigorous than the salmon, and owing to this, generally succeed in reaching and occupying the best and most favorable spawning beds, before the salmon put in an appearance.

With the SALMON we have dealt under the heading of "Habits and Haunts of Fish." From a piscatory point of view, it is a truly noble fish, and affords splendid sport, as every angler will corroborate who has the pleasure of landing a good lively fish, after a hard and heavy fight. Upon salmon fishing as a sport much might be written: the salmon fisher is a sportsman of an almost distinct species from ordinary anglers. The superiority of this game fascinates its followers, and prompts them to ignore, not only all other and inferior branches of the gentle craft, but by no means infrequently other field sports and national diversions for the pursuit of the salmon when in season. The true sportsman, however, pursues his peculiar vocation arduously, zealously, and spiritedly, and whether it be Nimrod, ramrod, or fishrod, for the time being his whole soul is thrown into the pursuit. Salmon fishers now wander far-a-field for pastures new; some enthusiastic sportsmen make the pursuit of the salmon their one object in life, roaming over the vast area of the European and American continents, and of late years the boundaries of these have been overstepped, since the virgin waters of the antipodes have proved so fertile. The popularity of salmon fishing has increased something like a hundred per cent. during the last half-century. Since the opening up of the Scotch Highlands by the royal steam route, branch extensions have rendered districts, once remote, comparatively easy of access, and a part of the brief vacation of the most

eminent statesmen and professional men and others, forming the brain power and intellect of the nation, is spent annually in the northern wilds, the royal emporium for the sportsman. Here in the

“Land of brown heath and shaggy wood,”  
Land of the mountain and the flood,

the roving disciple of the rod wanders up to the head of the river, into the heart of the mountains, sometimes cheered by the pleasant converse of a few true men and honest anglers like himself, often alone with nature in her fairest or wildest loveliness. Solitary or social, his appreciation of all the sweet charms of wild nature is ever keen and lively. Ubiquitous even as the “Murray”-bearing British Tourist is now the rod-carrying British angler. For his enthusiasm Scotland’s most extortionate hotels have no terrors, nor do Norway’s ruggedest solitudes and coarsest fare deter him from seeking the lordly salmon by many a “fjord” and “foss.”

Before passing on to the practical part of the art, it will be necessary to enumerate the chief articles requisite to a tolerable equipment.

The ROD first claims our attention. The remarks anent the choice of a rod for fly-fishing—as also winch and line for small stream fishing—apply equally to salmon-fishing. The lake and large river implement is of necessity of greater dimensions. The Castle Connell style of rod is tolerably good for some waters; but the small “grip” or hand-hold afforded by the slender stock has a very cramping effect when the rod is wielded industriously for a lengthened period. The six-foot joints, with the delicate spliced extremities, are very liable to damage whilst travelling. Greenheart is undoubtedly the best wood for heavy work. There are, however, good and bad varieties of every description of wood without exception. Thus we have indifferent Greenheart, Wahaba, Maho, and Locust, just as often, and perhaps more so than not,

made up into both salmon and trout rods; but the most deplorable error, the one to be most assiduously avoided, is cross-grained joints. There are individuals careless and unprincipled enough to make up short or cross-grained wood in most rods made by them. This defect is most noticeable in colored japanned articles. The steel-centred salmon rod is a weapon several feet shorter than the usual old-style lengths; a rod of fourteen being quite equal to an all-wood tool of sixteen-and-a-half feet.

The **LINE** and **REEL** need but little comment. The former should be from one hundred to one hundred and twenty yards in length for all round lake and river work. Salmon lines, as well as trout, are plaited taper, both double and single. Personally, we prefer a straight line, no matter of what material it may consist. The fine ends are worn and frayed by the constant friction, becoming soft, limp, and waterlogged, whilst the thicker parts of the line, not coming in for a fair share of the work, remain sound and good. The weakest part of a line, always in constant casting or spinning, gets the twist and turn, and is thus more readily frayed away. The hair and silk, cotton cord, and plaited hemp lines are inferior both in point of strength and durability to silk, plaited, and prepared to resist the action of the water and friction. The new Acme line, as we have already pointed out, is an advance on the waterproof silk lines. The annoyance of a bad or defective line can only be equalled by a defective reel. The salmon reel should be bronzed, and when made with check, this action should be of steel. Brass cogs are a delusion, being simply useless for heavy wear. It is no uncommon thing for an ordinary reel of this description to get completely deranged, through the non-durability of the centre parts. This is particularly noticeable in Indian Mahseer fishing, in which the wear of the winch is heavier still. The ad-

vantage of the centre stock reel is yet more exemplified in the larger tools. The convenient catching place for the loose line, always afforded by the side-fitting winches, is removed; indeed, we have equal confidence in the centre butt winch doing away with a fertile source of annoyance and loss, as we previously had in respect to the revolving plate, when we perfected that improvement, as compared with the old windlass handle, which is now being discarded in favor of our improvement. A small hole should be pierced in the revolving plates of large reels to admit of oil being inserted when needed.

**HOW TO USE ROD, REEL and LINE.**—This is a difficult matter to deal with on paper. Observation and practical instruction are so superior as means for conveying knowledge, as compared with mere verbal instruction, that we recommend the novice to make a combination of the two, by placing himself under the guidance of an experienced salmon fisher, if his circle of acquaintance embraces one.

Long-casting ranks amongst the foremost of the attributes to success and proficiency; and when some twenty-five yards can be put out tolerably straight the rodster may congratulate himself upon his having overcome the leading difficulty in the beginner's path. When a cast can be made fairly well, the knack of striking, etc., follows as a natural consequence. This is readily acquired from that best of tutors—experience. We have invariably found that if the loss of fish and tackle does not instil knowledge and suggest improvement, other expedients will be equally futile. The rules already laid down for casting in the case of trout and grayling hold good for salmon fishing, though with this difference, that the implements and tackle being of heavier calibre, a greater distance is to be attained by the action and impetus given to the rod and line. Precision is also of equal consequence, as the rodster has to cast when the fish are in a

sportive humor, within the "ring" of a rise, just the same as when in quest of smaller quarry. This requires a considerable amount of application to accomplish at a good distance; but just as the experienced cricketer handles the bat with tact and skill, so must the salmon fisher wield the rod; proficiency in both is the reward of constant practice, and of that only.

Some anglers acquire a certain right, and in some instances a left-hand cast, and acting up to an orthodox system, swing without deviation upon all occasions. The thing to do is, as we have elsewhere stated, to adapt one's self to the situation at all times, and learn to handle the tools so as to cast in any direction requisite to reach the fish. It is an endless source of pleasure to the adept to test his powers of casting under more than ordinarily difficult circumstances. He well knows that assiduous application to this matter is repaid by exceptional sport, and that too, when but little is doing in the well thrashed open.

When a fish is hooked, the variety of expedients resorted to is frequently considerable, one of the most common is that of "jiggering."\* In this a side to side motion is described by the line in the water. This is caused by the fish endeavoring to rake or rub out the hook in the bed of the water, or upon a flag or submerged stone. It is believed by some to be caused by the mere shaking of the fish's head in mid-water, but this is pure nonsense. We have watched the action of jiggering fish in clear water often, at almost every angle, and have generally found that a continued "jigger" bodes ill for the consummation of the capture. During a late visit to the Hebrides we experienced a rather striking instance of this. Upon the occasion in question we had

---

\*Our black bass, when hooked in running shallow waters "jigger;" at least I have had them to go through a modified form of the action described in the text.



hooked a good salmon, but at the expiration of two-thirds of an hour had not succeeded in landing it, owing to our peculiar position. We had hooked our fish whilst bank fishing upon a perpendicular rock, some six or eight feet above the surface of the water. During the greater part of this time the salmon had been active, so much so, that more than once our fine gear was in imminent danger of being severed. After these plunges and wild determined rushes to and fro had subsided, our quarry finally settled, in deep water, near the rock upon which we stood. There an unpleasant jiggering motion was described by the line.

In this instance, the water being comparatively clear, the movements of the fish were plainly discernible. Some ten feet or so from its surface he was energetically rubbing his snout upon a jutting part of the rock, from right to left, and left to right, without a moment's cessation. We ran paper down the line in the usual way, to no purpose, the exasperating "rub-rub" still continuing. Donald, the keeper, had meanwhile set off to explore for pebbles, but even this chance was denied, he returning as he went, empty-handed. As a last desperate effort, our pocket key-ring was fixed on the line (it being split steel), and run down. No sooner was this accomplished than the fish dashed away towards the open. Now for the first time the thought struck us that if the fish was not taken our keys were irrecoverably lost. Regretting our impetuosity, we cautiously gave and took line as occasion required. The presence of the nose ring and jingling appendages, meanwhile kept the fish in action. This, however, speedily told upon him, and finally he was safely gaffed in a more accessible situation. Since this occurred, we have had a number of small bright metal rings made, which we have found most useful for both sulky and jiggering fish.

Another frequent freak of the fish is to make for un-

derneath the boat, when the rodster occupies one; there the tackle is in danger of damage from the rough keel, even if the fisherman is quick enough to pass the rod's point around the stem or stern in time to avoid a dead wrench upon, and probable smash, of the tackle. The sulking propensities of salmon when hooked and wearied by futile efforts to escape, are well-known traits of their character. It is very tantalizing to await the pleasure of a stubborn fish of this description. There are instances upon record of anglers staying through the dark hours with a sulky fish. All that we would say further upon this subject is, that the necessity of such a thing is entirely obviated by the use of any small metal contrivance that will serve to drop down the line to arouse the fish from its lethargy or persistent doggedness of disposition.

In river fishing for salmon, every stream, pool, and likely eddy, should be well and carefully fished. When the gleam of a fish is discerned below the fly, and no rise ensues, a change of flies should be made. Salmon for fastidiousness stand unequalled. Upon certain days they take with avidity a certain kind of fly, while for some time afterwards it may be refused for another and totally different description. Upon the most frequented salmon waters peculiar flies are used of local notoriety. We do not believe, ourselves, in the hard and fast rules given as to this or that special dressing being infallibly successful upon any specified water, and on its uselessness upon another adjoining lake or river. The salmon fly is but a fanciful combination, arranged with a view to the general artistic effect; and as nature presents no model for man to imitate, the fanciful amalgamations of feathers, tinsel, fur, and wool, are closed upon by the sportive and capricious fish, in a mere spirit of wantonness, or because of its being novel. We have often (and we doubt not that a few of our readers have had similar experiences) surprised native rodsters by the effect of a non-observance

of their given rules of procedure. A strange fly, whether it happens to be sombre or gay, frequently does wonders amongst these fickle fish. Change, in this respect, is far more effective in influencing the net yield than can easily be credited.

Salmon flies exist in myriads of varieties, and to attempt to enumerate the whole of those in general esteem would be a needless task. The following are a few of the standard killers of universal repute:\*

The Jock Scott.	The Wasp.
“ Black Dose.	“ Doctor.
“ Spey Dog.	“ Rainbow.
“ Butcher.	“ Captain.
“ Shannon.	“ Lightning.
“ Parson.	“ Blacker’s Patterns.
“ Ranger.	etc., etc.

In addition to the above, we commend the following:—The Spanker, the Rob Roy, the Spartan, the Tam o’ Shanter, and the Mac Sporrán, for a description of which see Salmon Fly-making. The impartiality of this fish towards any particular lure or class of artificials for all seasons and occasions is in marked contrast with the pedantic partiality of many anglers, who pin their faith upon an odd fly or so, that has happened to do something exceptional in their hands, it may be; but it is of small use trying to convince these of their error. Prejudice and obstinacy satisfy them that they are infallibly right. While fishing some few years ago on Loch Nell, we took an exceptionally large salmon, whose habitual haunt was in one particular spot, near a submerged rock. Upon our return to the inn, the landlord eagerly inquired as to what part of the water he had been extracted from; and our capture proved to be an old acquaintance of his, a

---

\*The majority of these flies can be bought from American dealers in fishing-tackle.

fish that had nevertheless cut his acquaintance very frequently according to his account. Though the form and dimensions of the fish greatly interested our worthy host, the fly that had been instrumental in his capture monopolized his chief attention. Ever after this event the landlord played the "Spanker" without cessation or intermission. Subsequently, whenever the man was seen with a fish, the query "what fly?" was certain to elicit the reply "Spanker! sir;" indeed, among the visitors, the virtues of the Spanker was so well worn a topic, that the subject was finally suppressed at first scent.

Spinning and Trolling for sea trout and salmon are common practices in the north, especially upon the lochs, where the bait is spun by a propelled boat at a distance of fifty yards or so in its wake. Whenever the fish refuse to rise, spinning may with advantage be resorted to; indeed, mid-water fishing may, under these circumstances, often be practised with signal success, though as a general thing, it does not yield the sport of surface fishing. Small fish of almost any description, when from four to six inches in length, may be used. The best artificial baits are the metal ones, the "Universal," "Excelsior," "Devon," and "Spoon."

The Red Caterpillar is as killing a lure for salmon and sea trout when they are not rising, as it is for common brown trout, etc. It is used in precisely the same way, but is constructed, as a matter of course, much larger; the loop too, at the head, should be of double salmon gut. Black palmers with silver twist are also good, but not to be compared with the red, as the habitual users of both can testify. If there is anything objectionable in the use of the Caterpillar for sea trout and salmon, it is the partiality of the smaller fry for them; they, especially the brown trout, are really boring in their incessant attentions. At the end of a day upon the Awe in Argyleshire, when we had been more than usually pestered in

this manner, the following colloquy ensued with Gibby, the gillie in charge of the boat.

“Faith, and dun yer ken what fysshe wa’en ta’en the day, weth the hairy worren?”

“No!”

“Wal, twanty-four dozen sma’ throu’t jest—an they twa white fysshe—sure, it’s a fearsome baste, an’ a regular kill devil.”

To those anglers who habitually smoke whilst fishing, and their name is legion, we would tender a word of advice. Never carry vesuvius loose in your waistcoat pocket, or you may perchance be troubled with a touch of heartburn externally, as was the experience of the writer on one occasion whilst playing a fish from the banks of the Tweed. We had unconsciously given the receptacle of the pipe lights a touch with the butt end of the rod, when the whole ignited, the result of the conflagration being loss of the fish, and the spoliation of certain garments.

We may here also observe, that when landing a fish with a short-handled gaff upon a high bank over deep water, it is not always safe to be backed with a well-filled creel, for should the creel happen to find its way to the front, suddenly and unexpectedly you may feel as we did once, viz., that a cold water plunge is inevitable under the circumstances.

In salmon as in trout fishing, the location of a fish poised for feeding or perhaps rising, requires often a little reconnoitring. The course of the water in his immediate vicinity should be noted, and the lure presented accordingly. In order to circumvent exceptionally large fish more particularly, it is by no means advisable to cast haphazard in the vicinity of the fish before the distance is rightly calculated, or the course of the water appreciated. If it is your earnest desire to take the fish seen rising, like an efficient general you must take in the

bearing of the situation, with a view to so presenting the lure as to leave nothing wanting in skill and judgment upon the part of the rodster.

---

## CHAPTER XVI.

### ABOUT HOOKS.

CRIPPLED HOOKS ; THE OVER-BARBED HOOK ; DEFECTS IN TEMPER, ETC. ; THE LIMERICK : KENDAL-SNECK ; CARLISLE ; KIRBY ; THE "SWAN" BEND ; THE NEW EYED HOOKS.

In a country which takes the lead in piscatorial pursuits, and whose improvements serve as the type and pattern for other nations, constant progress should at least be made, and improvements achieved in order to retain the position gained. If there is one thing more than another, in this branch of industry that we excel in, it is the manufacture of our hooks. These are in general use upon the continent, in the colonies, and everywhere where the angling art is practised. It will, therefore, be readily conceded by all who have devoted attention to the subject, that more attention is due to this important item in the angler's equipage and in our national commerce, than has, of late years, been bestowed upon it. Previous to our suggesting any improvements in detail, we intend calling attention to a few very common defects in hooks, as generally constructed, to which may be directly traced much unnecessary loss and disaster.

The excessively bony nature of the mouth of most fish has frequently a very trying effect upon the hook; therefore, any little deficiency in its make, or manner of construction, leads to untold evils. In order to render our-

selves intelligible to the reader we shall first describe the usual system of making the hook. First, then, the wire is struck off in given lengths, in accordance with the size of the hook required; next, the point is formed and the shank reduced by a few strokes of the file; and next, the barb is cut by means of a large knife. All is now ready for bending, which is one of the most particular items in the construction, as the operation decides the shape, and consequently, the particular species of hook to be produced. This is quickly done by means of a small steel block around which the wire is bent, the shape of the block varying according to the particular bend required. Now comes the final operation, viz., that of tempering. This is done in a large pan over a slow furnace. Millions of hooks are frequently tempered in one operation, therefore the greatest care should be bestowed upon this important point; but of this more anon. The most fertile source of complaint is, we believe, the undue weakness of the majority of hooks at the barb (see diagram VI., fig. 2). A deeply barbed hook may be safely discarded as being too dangerous to use. There is no earthly necessity for it. Not only is the wire half cut through by the operation, but the point of the hook is forced quite out of the straight line; thus, not only requiring heavier striking to hook a fish properly, but being more liable to snap by the sudden strain. The very action of inserting the bearding knife too deeply causes the point to project outwards inadvertently (see Plate 6, fig. 2), giving it a "scratch and let go" appearance, and no less effect; indeed, there are but two alternatives for a hook of this description when a fish is caught upon the gristly or bony part of the mouth—(1) to scratch as described, or (2) to break clean off at the barb near the point of the hook. We have seen hooks fitted with costly salmon flies, nine-tenths of them being quite useless, having broken at this identical point. A batch was shown to us by (the late)

Mr. Frank Buckland, H. M. Inspector of Inland Fisheries, numbering one hundred and twenty-seven, all broken. The original value ranged from five shillings to one guinea each.\* Nine of these were broken at the sharp bend of the Limerick hook, the whole of the remainder at the barb. The loss incurred at this rate is considerable, and when we take the fish into account, it is simply monstrous.

This defect is by no means confined to the Limerick bend of hook; it is frequently more conspicuous in the Sneck or Kendal bent hooks, so universally used in trout fishing: *vide* the experience of everybody. Another point of paramount importance is the tempering, as when this is done in a defective manner, by being left too high or too low, disappointment and loss ensue as the inevitable result.

Among non-japanned hooks uselessly soft ones may sometimes be distinguished by the color, as when steel is left a very light blue, it is invariably soft and pliable. The best tempered hooks are left a purple-blue color. In japanned hooks the only reliable way of detecting faulty ones is to test them by sticking the point in a piece of porous wood or cork, and applying a heavy though steady strain to the shank. Our idea of a perfect Limerick salmon hook we give upon Plate 6, fig. 3. The distance from the bend to the point is greatly diminished; the barb and point being short and sharp are well adapted to take good and firm hold upon a hard or soft substance. The main strength of metal, too, is just where most needed, namely, at the sudden turn of the bend, which, it may be observed, is not nearly so sharp or decisive as in the old style Limerick. Experience teaches, so says the maxim. Experience long since taught us that changes in this respect were absolutely necessary, and for an equally long

---

\* Rather costly salmon flies—fifteen to sixty dollars per dozen.



period experience, the self-same teacher, has proved the hook now submitted to be perfectly exempt from the evils previously pointed out. The Kendal Sneck, to which we have already made some allusion, is the bend generally adopted for trout flies. It is often made from very fine wire, which renders it useless for a heavy fish. This is the hook most generally used for dry-fly fishing. A judiciously tapered shank will reduce the weight whilst retaining the full strength round the bend requisite for an emergency. This, as we have already pointed out, is of the most vital importance; an exhibition of false economy in this matter will cause the angler's skill to avail nothing. We know of no more tantalizing thing than to lose the heaviest fish of the day, month, or season, through a defective hook. When once a fish is well hooked upon sound "tack," it is the rodster's own fault if he fails to land it. A spell at the salmon will frequently put out the delicacy of the trout fisher's touch, and he, by too sanguine striking, will lose every fish he hooks, either by breaking away the hold, or otherwise the hook. The range of Kendal hooks, given upon the plate, shows the relative strength and sizes of what we have used for trouting flies for many years. The Kendal hook should be slightly crooked or twisted in the bend, as the body and the hackle standing out will, to some extent, serve to guard the point. A great many of the short rises one experiences sometimes, are due to the non-observance of this rule, the fish taking the fly with the skin of his teeth, so to speak, the point fails to take any hold whatever. The wide "span" of the salmon hook obviates the necessity of this. The trout hook then, for the same reason, should have reasonable scope in this respect, so as to be capable of taking broad hold and to retain it. The point and barb should be anything but "proud;" the evils of this are far more objectionable, whilst being quite as prevalent, in smaller and lighter hooks, than has

been shown in the case of the heavy Limerick. The relative weight-sustaining powers of straight-pointed and "rake-pointed" hooks may be exemplified in the following manner. Take a "rake" pointed, deeply-barbed Limerick, Kendal, or any other bend, and take also a "straight" pointed hook of the same size and strength of metal. Secure a length of gut to the shank of each hook, and stick the points slightly into a deal board, and now attach a spring-balance to each piece of gut, and pull. The staying powers of the "straight point" will be found to be almost double that of the others.

The eyed hook (Plate 6, fig. 4) is a new bend, the joint production of Capt. Bankart, Leicester; Capt. Turle, and Mr. H. S. Hall, of Clifton. The bend is a sort of cross between the old Kirby and the Limerick. The color is of a light brown, like that of an ordinary steel pen. This is a decided improvement on the japanning system, and deserves to be more generally adopted. The advantages of the loop at the head of a made-up artificial are considerable, the loss occasioned by the gut fraying or necking off being greatly diminished, if not entirely obviated. All large or heavy flies have of necessity to be dressed looped. In the case of the very finest, for dry-fly or grayling fishing, it is scarcely so advisable, especially in still waters, or the chalk streams of Hampshire, where, as in the lower portions of those of Derby and neighboring counties, it is absolutely necessary to float the dry fly over every fish. It will be seen that the loop projects upwards. This in a manner casts the weight upon the wings, and preserves the equilibrium of the "artificial." The gut may be attached to the loop, as in the case of Salmon flies, by means of the slip knot, known as the "Carrick bend," with this difference, that the gut is passed through the underside of the loop first.

Hooks used for spinning purposes are required to be very heavily ironed, more especially for pike; weak trian-

gles are the rule rather than the exception. Weight here is no detriment but rather an advantage. In selecting hooks, the weight they are required to bear should always be taken into consideration, and the thickness of the wire chosen accordingly. Treble hooks for salmon and pike fishing in particular, are much too delicate, generally speaking. We have seen several triangles broken at the strike of a heavy fish. The temper of many triangles, or brazed hooks sold, has been affected during the brazing operation. The plan generally adopted over-tempers them, thus causing them to be hard and brittle; and as two or sometimes three and more hooks have frequently to be driven home, the odds are that if the fish does not break them the rodster often does. Breakages are so rife in the case of brazed hooks, owing mainly to the causes above named, that many anglers have been led to eschew them altogether; but the fault lies largely with the angler who selects them too fine and delicate in the metal.

The hooks requisite for successful roach fishing should be moderately long-shanked. We prefer the "Sneck" to the "round" or Carlisle bend, the latter being frequently too short in the shank, and having much too exaggerated a "span" in the bend to work with a short shank properly. The remarks anent weak wire apply equally to round bend roach hooks; and if we combine with the above the usual fault of a turned-out, rakish-looking point, no room is left for surprise at the many disasters incurred by their use. The greater utility of a well-proportioned hook may be easily ascertained by the following simple experiment. Take two hooks—a moderately long-shanked one nicely tapered, with a straight point, and a short-shanked hook with a turned-out point. Attach gut to each. Now procure a small piece of parchment or thin card-board, upon which take good hold with both hooks and endeavor to penetrate this by applying

equal pressure to each. If this is done at all evenly the long-shanked hook will quickly pierce the substance, making a clean incision; meanwhile the attitude of the remaining hook scarcely admits of any impression being made at all, a perfectly flat surface being presented from the tip of the point to the end of the barb, which effectually prevents any incision.

Most of the various forms or bends of the hooks now in use were introduced before the advent of the present century. Of these, however, there have since been many modifications and variations. One of the oldest bends is the "Kirby," the originator, Charles Kirby, having lived and flourished in the seventeenth century. In the third edition of an old book on Angling, published in 1700, entitled, "The Angler's Vade Mecum,"—a copy of which we are pleased to be able to say we have in our possession—the following quaint advertisement appears appended to the preface:—

"At the Sign of the Fish, in Black Horse Alley near Fleet Bridge, liveth Will Browne, who maketh all sorts of Fishing Rods, and selleth all sorts of Fishing Tackle; also Charlie Kirby's Hooks, with Worms, Gentles and Fly's; and also the East India Weed, which is the only thing for Trout, Carp, and Bottom Fishing, first being well soaked for half-an-hour before you use it in water, being of a brittle nature, if not moistened before used, and then proves so strong and fine, of a water-colour, that it deceives the Fish, much more than Hair or Silk. Note—That Kirby's Hooks are known by the fineness of the Wyer and Strength, and many Shops sell Counterfeit for his, which prove prejudicial to the User. The true Kirby's are to be sold by Will Browne and nowhere Else."

Kirby's hooks, however, have long since been discarded, except in perch and such like fishing. Another hook that used to be greatly in vogue was the "Staple bend."

Sproat's, too, have now about gone out.\* Those in general use at the present day are the Sneek or Kendal, the Limerick, and Carlisle, or round bend; for eels, the bend known as the "Shepherd's Crook," is much used.

For fine grayling fishing, perhaps, a really strong and delicate hook is more essential than in any other style or system of angling. The grayling is a much more fastidious fish than the trout, and is moreover the most tender-mouthed fish that swims. It is no uncommon thing for the angler, when fishing for grayling, to find a portion of the jaw of an escaped fish remaining upon his hook; more especially when rough bottom tackle is used. The hook useful for trout is, generally speaking, too large and heavy for grayling, the excessively small flies he usually prefers being difficult to copy when a clumsy and heavy hook is employed. There has long been a want felt of a suitable hook for grayling, to be at once light, durable, and effective in shape and make. Many experiments we have tried in years past with the view of surmounting this difficulty, but failure was the characteristic feature of each, until we accidentally hit upon a peculiar bend (Plate 6, fig. 5), which was found to work with unusual success. Conjointly with several friends of the rod, we have tested this hook thoroughly, and with perfectly satisfactory results.

This hook has been designated the "Swan"-bend, and as such it is known amongst the few anglers who have hitherto kept it a secret. It may be gathered from what has been previously stated that the faults and deficiencies, as well as the merits of hooks, rest to a great extent with the manufacturer.

---

\* The Sproat hook, if not made of the best material is certainly a delusion and a snare—not for the fish, but the angler. When it is made right and of the very best material, it has in my opinion no superior.



Every Owner of a Dog should have this Book.

## THE DOGS

Of Great Britain, America, and Other Countries.

Their Breeding, Training, and Management in Health and Disease, comprising all the essential parts of the two Standard Works on the Dog by

STONEHENGE.

Thereby furnishing what once cost \$11.25 for \$2.00.

It describes the best Game and HUNTING GROUNDS IN AMERICA.

Gives names of Prize Winners in Dog Shows.

Contains OVER ONE HUNDRED BEAUTIFUL ENGRAVINGS, embracing most noted Dogs in both Continents.

Making together, WITH CHAPTERS BY AMERICAN WRITERS, the MOST COMPLETE DOG BOOK EVER PUBLISHED.

12mo. Tinted Paper. Price, post-paid, \$2.00.

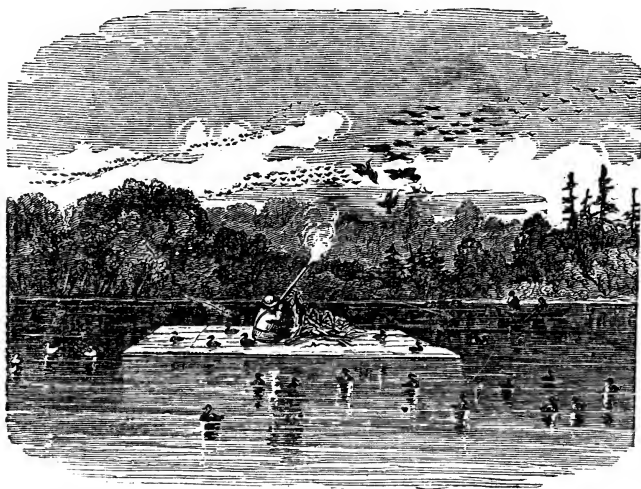
ORANGE JUDD COMPANY, 751 Broadway, New York.



# American Game Bird Shooting.

By JOHN MORTIMER MURPHY,

*Author of Sporting Adventures in the Far West, Rambles in Northwest America, The Zoology and Resources of Oregon and Washington Territory, A Search for the Mountain of Gold, The Forester of the Ardennes, Adventures in the Woods of Florida, etc., etc.*



"This is the only book yet published which gives the haunts and habits of the feathered game of the North American Continent, from a sportsman's point of view, and is therefore valuable to all lovers of the gun."—*The Sportsman*.

"Mr. Murphy possesses the somewhat rare faculty of giving a vast amount of information in a concise and interesting manner.—'American Game Bird Shooting' will be found fully as interesting to the ordinary reader as to the most ardent votary of the dog and gun."—*N. Y. Herald*.

"A work which may be read with both pleasure and profit by sportsmen generally, and it is a timely addition to the literature of sport."—*Turf, Field and Farm*.

"This volume contains descriptions of our game and water-fowl, treats of their haunts and habits and also of the various modes employed in their capture; there are at least many things in its pages which it may be worth while for the tyro to know."—*Forest and Stream*.

"A splendid book for true sportsmen."—*Ohio Farmer*.

HANDSOMELY ILLUSTRATED.

12mo. Cloth. Tinted Paper. Price, post-paid, \$2.00.

**ORANGE JUDD COMPANY, 751 Broadway, New York.**

**JUST PUBLISHED.**

---

PRACTICAL HINTS  
ON  
RIFLE PRACTICE  
WITH  
MILITARY ARMS.

**By C. E. PRESCOTT.**

A most useful little Hand-book for the many who wish to attain skill in the use of the Rifle. Pocket Edition.

Flexible Cloth, 18mo. PRICE, POST-PAID, 50 CENTS.

---

THE  
SAILING BOAT.

**Practical Instructions for its Management.**

Together with "Nautical Vocabulary," "Weather Indications," and "Rules for Sailing Boat Matches."

**By C. E. PRESCOTT.**

Flexible Cloth, 18mo. PRICE, POST-PAID, 50 CENTS.

**ORANGE JUDD COMPANY, 751 Broadway, New York.**



# COLORADO

## As an Agricultural State.

Its Farms, Fields, and Garden Lands.

By **WILLIAM E. PABOR.**

ILLUSTRATED

A Volume of Great Value and Interest to those seeking  
Farms and Homes in the Far West

In his preface to this work the author says : In preparing this volume I have aimed to keep strictly within the border line of facts. Twelve years of careful observation, a personal acquaintance with nearly all the valleys described herein, an earnest desire to make public the agricultural resources of a State whose remarkable growth has no parallel in American history,—these have been impelling motives in the preparation of this truthful account of the valleys, plains, and parks of Colorado.

### TABLE OF CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.—Introductory.	CHAPTER XII.—San Luis Park.
“ II.—Historical and Geographical.	“ XIII.—Southwestern Colorado.
“ III.—Colonization in Colorado.	“ XIV.—Artesian Wells—Reservoirs.
“ IV.—Irrigation — Measurement of Water.	“ XV.—Apiculture.
“ V.—Area Susceptible of Irrigation.	“ XVI.—Fruit Growing.
“ VI.—How Farming Pays.	“ XVII.—Questions and Answers.
“ VII.—Caché-la-Poudre Valley.	“ XVIII.—Colorado Agricultural College.
“ VIII.—Big Thompson, Little Thompson, St. Vrain.	“ XIX.—Farming Journals.
“ IX.—Boulder and Clear Creek Valleys.	“ XX.—Cattle and Sheep.
“ X.—South Platte Valley.	“ XXI.—The Railway System of the State.
“ XI.—Southern Colorado.	“ XXII.—Garden Culture by Irrigation.

12mo. Cloth. Price, post-paid. \$1.50.

**ORANGE JUDD COMPANY, 751 Broadway, New York.**



# The American Agriculturist

FOR THE

Farm, Garden, and Household.

Established in 1842.

The Best and Cheapest Agricultural Journal in the World.

TERMS, which include postage *pre-paid* by the Publishers: \$1.50 per annum, in advance; 3 copies for \$4; 4 copies for \$5; 5 copies for \$6; 6 copies for \$7; 7 copies for \$8; 10 or more copies, only \$1 each. Single Numbers, 15 cents.

## AMERIKANISCHER AGRICULTURIST.

The only purely Agricultural German paper in the United States, and the best in the world. It contains all of the principal matter of the English Edition, together with special departments for German cultivators, prepared by writers trained for the work. Terms same as for the "American Agriculturist."

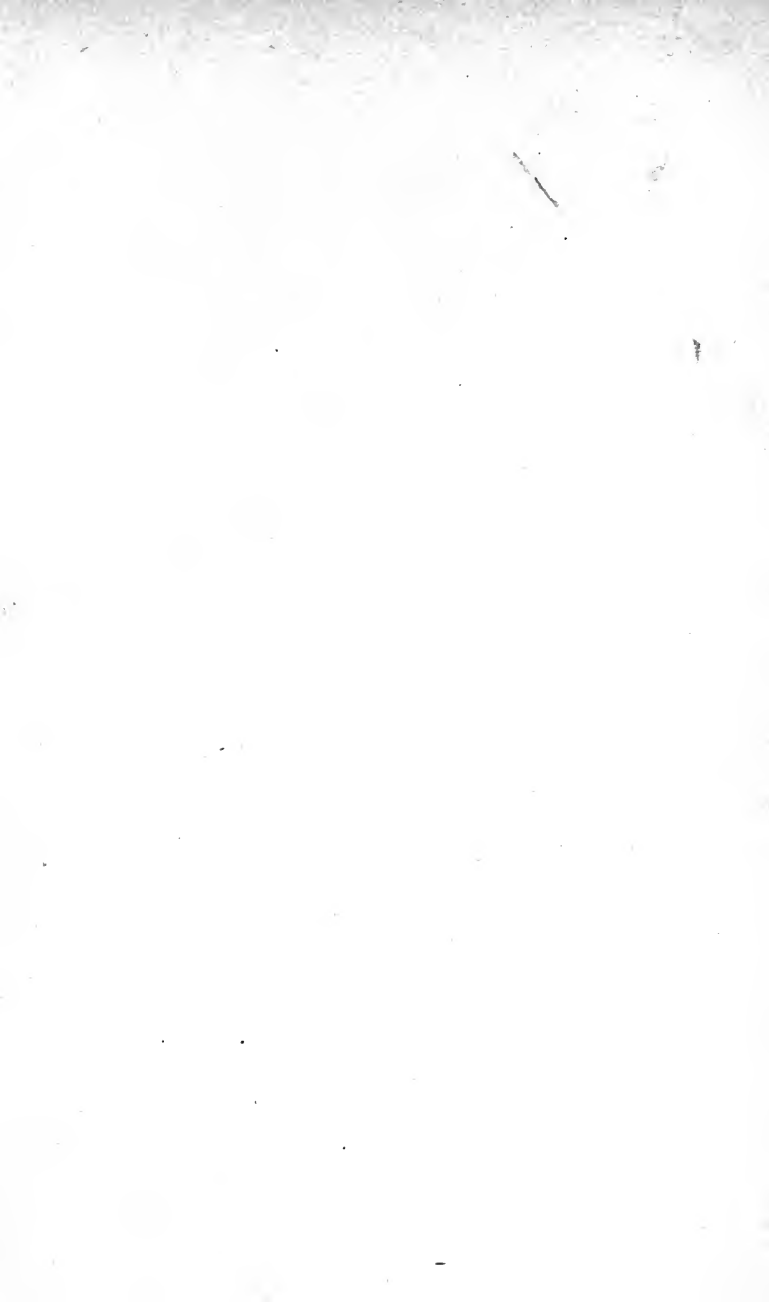
## BOOKS FOR FARMERS AND OTHERS.

Send ten cents for our new handsomely illustrated and descriptive Catalogue of Books on all branches of Agriculture, Horticulture, Architecture, etc. All books comprised in this Catalogue will be mailed pre-paid on receipt of the price named. Our abridged descriptive Catalogue of Books will be sent free on application.

## Books on Out-Door Sports and Pastimes.

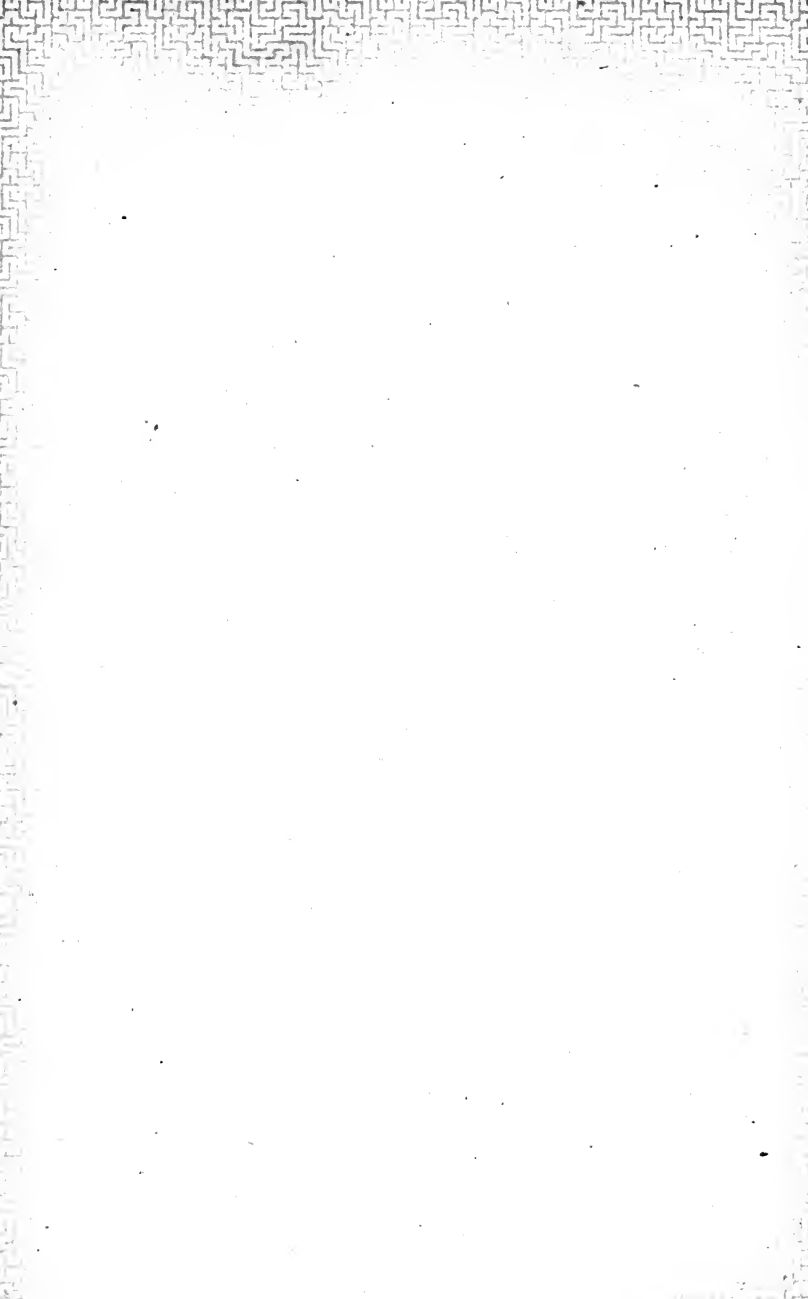
Send five cents for our new and elegantly gotten up SPORTSMAN'S COMPANION, containing brief descriptions or outlines of nearly one hundred and eighty works upon legitimate Out-door Sports and Amusements, and illustrated with a great number of engravings, many of them drawn from life, and faithfully portraying the points and characteristics of game, birds, fishes, horses, dogs, etc., etc.

ORANGE JUDD COMPANY, 751 Broadway, New York.









YB 1U664

\$15<sup>00</sup> Levee

